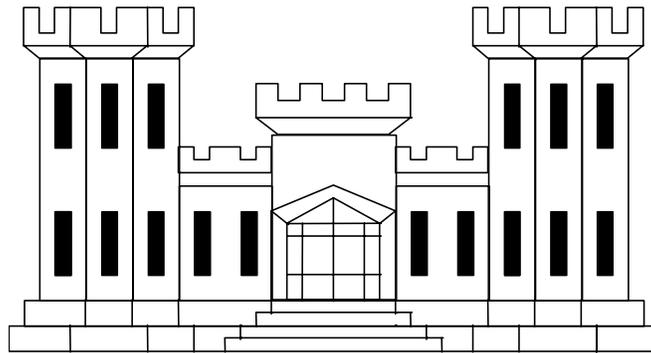


**HEADQUARTERS,  
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY**

**ARTEP 5-217-35-MTP**



**MISSION TRAINING PLAN  
FOR THE  
ENGINEER COMPANY  
ENGINEER BATTALION  
AIR ASSAULT DIVISION**

**DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.**



# MISSION TRAINING PLAN

## ENGINEER COMPANY, ENGINEER BATTALION, AIR ASSAULT DIVISION

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>PAGE</u>
<b>Table of Contents</b> .....	i
<b>PREFAC</b> .....	ii
<b>Chapter 1. Unit Training</b> .....	1-1
<b>Chapter 2. Training Matrixes</b> .....	2-1
2-1. General.....	2-1
2-2. Mission to Collective Tasks Matrix.....	2-1
<b>Chapter 3. Mission Outlines/Training Plans</b> .....	3-1
<b>Chapter 4. Training Exercise</b> .....	4-1
<b>Chapter 5. Training and Evaluation Outlines</b> .....	5-1
<b>Chapter 6. External Evaluation</b> .....	6-1
<b>APPENDIX A - EXERCISE OPERATION ORDER (OPORD)</b> .....	Appendix A-1
<b>APPENDIX B - CONVERSION FACTORS (UNITED STATES [US] AND METRIC)</b> .....	Appendix B-1
<b>Glossary</b> .....	Glossary-1
<b>References</b> .....	References-1
<b>QUESTIONNAIRE</b> .....	Questionnaire-1

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

\*This publication, along with ARTEP-MTPs 5-025-66, 5-026-34, 5-027-10, 5-155-66, 5-156-34, 5-157-10, 5-157-35, 5-217-10, 5-335-60, 5-335-65, 5-335-70, 5-425-66, 5-426-34, 5-427-10, 5-445-66, 5-446-34, 5-446-36, 5-447-10, and 5-447-35, dated 2 October 2000, and ARTEP 5-027-35-MTP, dated 28 October 2000, supercedes ARTEP 5-025-MTP, 18 October 1989.

## PREFACE

This mission training plan (MTP) provides the Active (AC) and Reserve Component (RC) training manager with a descriptive, mission-oriented training program to train the unit to perform its critical wartime operations. While general defense plan missions and deployment assignments impact on the priorities, the operations described here are the principal ones that the Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Air Assault Division, are expected to execute with a high level of proficiency. Each unit is expected to train, as a minimum, to the standards of the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) in the MTP. Standards for training may be more difficult but may not be lowered. This document is in alignment with and is part of the United States (US) Army's training and tactical doctrine.

This MTP applies to the Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Air Assault Division table(s) of organization and equipment (TOE) 05217L000.

The proponent of this publication is Headquarters (HQ), United States (US) Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC). Send comments and recommendations on Department of Army (DA) Form 2028 directly to Commandant, Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-E, Fort Leonard Wood, Missouri 65473-6600.

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns do not refer exclusively to men.

## CHAPTER 1

### Unit Training

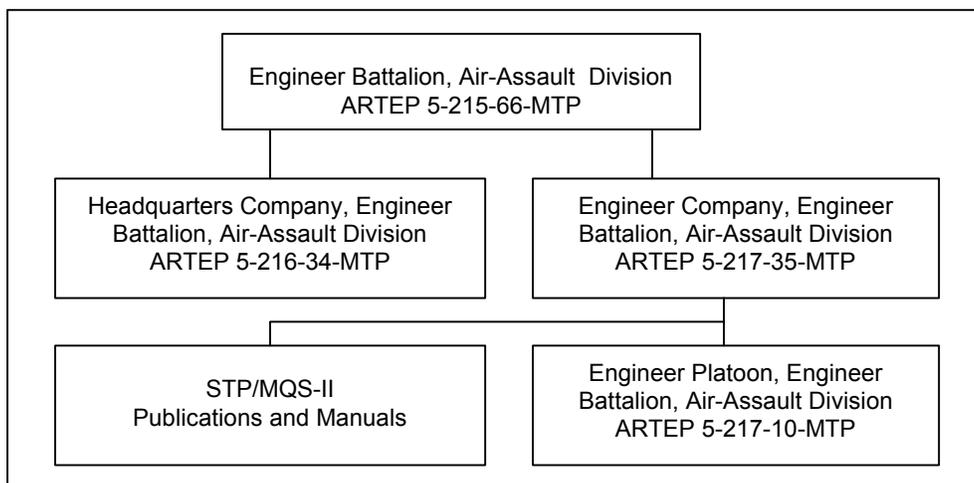
1-1. General. This mission training plan (MTP) provides the commander and leaders with guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit. The specific details of the unit's training program will depend on the following factors:

- a. Unit's mission-essential task list (METL).
- b. Chain-of-command training directives and guidance.
- c. Training priorities of the unit.
- d. Availability of training resources and areas.

1-2. Supporting Material. This MTP describes a critical wartime mission-oriented training program that is part of the next higher echelon's training program. This relationship is illustrated in Figure 1-1. The unit's training program consists of:

- a. Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP) 5-215-66-MTP. This ARTEP MTP indicates the relationship of the battalion training program to the company training program.
- b. ARTEP 5-335-DRILL for the engineer drills. The unit must sustain drills. They are United States (US) Army standards and may not be modified.
- c. Soldier's training publications (STPs) for the appropriate military occupational specialty (MOS) and skill levels.
- d. Military Qualification Standards (MQS)-II manual for company-grade officers.

Figure 1-1 shows the relationship of these supporting materials.



**Figure 1-1. MTP Echelon Relationship**

1-3. Contents. This MTP is organized into six chapters and three appendixes.

- a. Chapter 1, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of this MTP. This chapter explains how to use this MTP in establishing an effective training program.

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes, shows the relationship between the missions-to-collective tasks.

c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines, presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between the missions and their subordinate tasks.

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises, consists of a field training exercise (FTX) and supporting situational training exercises (STXs). They provide training information and a preconstructed scenario. Also, they can serve as a part of an internal or external evaluation. These exercises may be modified to suit the training needs of this unit.

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines, provides the training and evaluation criteria for all the tasks this unit must master to effectively perform its mission. Each task is a T&EO that identifies task steps, performance measures, individual and leader tasks, and opposing forces (OPFOR) counter tasks. Each T&EO is part of a mission, and in various combinations, composes training exercises in Chapter 4.

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation, provides instructions for planning, preparing, and executing an external evaluation.

g. Appendix A, Exercise Operation Order (OPORD), used in conjunction with the training exercise in Chapter 4.

h. Appendix B, Conversion Factors (United States [US] and Metric), shows how to convert metric and US measurements.

1-4. Missions and Tasks. This MTP concerns specific missions found in the table(s) of organization and equipment (TOE) and an implied mission that this unit must perform in order to accomplish the specified missions. The critical mission is the focal mission for this unit. The commander may supplement these missions with his own. The following is a listing of the missions for this unit:

- Mobility
- Countermobility
- Survivability
- Fight as an Engineer

a. Tasks for this mission may be trained individually or jointly with other tasks. Training is based on the criteria described in the T&EOs. Several T&EOs can be trained as an STX. Various combinations of STXs can be used to develop an FTX for the unit to practice its entire mission responsibility. Several STXs can be developed into an external evaluation that is designed by the next higher echelon to evaluate the unit's ability to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.

b. Squad tasks are trained in much the same way as described above. However, the squad leader must also train the drills provided in the drill book.

c. Leader tasks that support the unit's missions are trained through STP training, battle simulations, and execution of this unit's missions.

d. Individual tasks that support unit tasks are mastered by training to standards in the appropriate STP.

1-5. Principles of Training. This MTP is based on the training principles found in Field Manual (FM) 25-100. For further information see Chapter 1 of this manual.

1-6. Training Strategy. The training program developed and executed by the engineer battalion to train to standards in its critical wartime missions will be a component of the Army's CATS. The purpose of the CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the Total Army will train and identify the resources required to support that training. CATS will provide the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to the CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the types of training events and resources required to train to standard. CATS will be embedded in the SATS Version 4.1 and higher.

a. The unit training strategies central to CATS will provide the commander with a descriptive "menu" for training reflecting that while there is an optimal way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units in the Army will have the exact mix of resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.

b. This unit's training strategy provides a means for training the battalion to standard by listing the required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects from this MTP those tasks required to train his METL. The training strategies to be provided in the SATS Version 4.1 will provide the means whereby those tasks that can be trained through a focused and integrated training plan.

c. This unit's training strategy will be comprised of three separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks found in the MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows the unit to train to standard. The elements of the unit's training strategy are:

(1) Maneuver and collective training strategy. The maneuver strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depicts those resources that are required to support the training events.

(2) Gunnery strategy. The gunnery strategy is based on weapons systems found in the unit. It provides an annual training plan and depicts resources required to support weapons training. Data for the gunnery strategy comes from the Standards in Training Commission (STRAC) manual or the appropriate FM publications.

(3) Soldier strategy. The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier.

d. A vital element in the unit training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. Critical training gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before moving on to a more difficult or resource-intensive training event or task. Training gates follow the crawl, walk, run training methodology. For instance, if the unit training strategy calls for conducting an FTX, and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the training tasks contained in the STX must be trained to standard before conducting the FTX. Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess the preparedness of the soldiers, or unit(s), to move on to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates is made recognizing that the unit's METL and the commander's assessment of his unit's training status will determine the selection and timing of the collective training exercises in a specific unit's training strategy.

e. When developing the unit's training plan, the commander identifies from the MTP the training tasks required to train his METL. CATS is discussed in Appendix A of this MTP.

1-7. Conducting Training. This MTP is designed to facilitate planning, preparing, and conducting unit training as explained in FMs 25-100 and 25-101. The commander--

a. Assigns the missions and supporting tasks for which he intends to develop training based on his METL and the guidance from the next higher headquarters (HQ). Trainers must plan and execute unit training to support this guidance.

b. Reviews the mission outlines in Chapter 3 to determine whether the STXs and FTXs provided will support, or can be modified to support, command guidance. If they do not support the guidance, or if they need to be modified, refer to the matrixes in Chapter 2. These matrixes provide a list of all critical collective tasks, drills, and individual tasks that must be mastered to perform the mission.

c. Prioritizes the tasks that need training. There will never be time to train everything. You must focus on the greatest challenges and most difficult sustainment skills.

d. Integrates training tasks into the training schedule. Use the following procedures to do this:

(1) List the tasks in the priority and frequency that they need to be trained.

(2) Determine the amount of time required and how you can use multiechelon training for the best effect.

(3) Determine where the training can take place.

(4) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.

(5) Organize your needs into blocks of time and training vehicles.

e. Approves the list of tasks to be trained. Once the list is approved, he schedules them on the unit's training schedule.

f. Determines the equipment and supplies needed to conduct the training.

g. Informs the subordinate leaders of training requirements and oversees their training. Ensures that the standards are rigidly enforced.

#### 1-8. Force Protection (Safety).

a. Safety is a component of force protection. Commanders, leaders, and soldiers use risk assessment and management to tie force protection into the military around the mission. Risk management assigns the responsibility, institutionalizes the commander's review of operational safety, and leads to decision making at a level of command appropriate to the risk. The objective of safety is to help unit's protect combat power through accident prevention, which enables units to win fast and decisively, with minimum losses. Safety is an integral part of all combat operations. Safety begins with readiness that determines a unit's ability to perform its METL to standard. Readiness standards addressed during METL assessment are--

(1) Soldiers with the self-discipline to consistently perform tasks to standard.

(2) Leaders who are ready, willing, and able to enforce standards.

(3) Training that provides skills needed for performance to standard.

(4) Standards and procedures for task preference that are clear and practical.

(5) Support for task preference, including equipment, personnel, maintenance, facilities, and services.

b. Risk management is a tool that addresses the root causes (readiness shortcomings) of accidents. It assists commanders and leaders in not only identifying what the next accident is going to be, but also helps identify who will have the next accident. Risk management is a way to put more realism into training without paying the price in death, injuries, or damaged equipment.

c. Safety demands total chain-of-command involvement in planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training. The chain-of-command's responsibilities include--

(1) Commanders.

- (a) Seek optimum, not adequate, performance.
- (b) Specify the risk they will accept to accomplish the mission.
- (c) Select risk reductions provided by the staff.
- (d) Accept or reject residual risk, based on the benefit to be derived.
- (e) Train and motivate leaders at all levels to effectively use risk management concepts.

(2) Staff.

- training.
- (a) Assists the commander in assessing risks and develops risk-reduction options for
  - (b) Integrates risk control in plans, orders, METL standards, and performance measures.
  - (c) Eliminates unnecessary safety restrictions that diminish training effectiveness.
  - (d) Assesses safety performance during training.
  - (e) Evaluates safety performance during after-action review(s) (AARs).

(3) Subordinate leaders.

- lead.
- (a) Apply consistently effective risk-management concepts and methods to operations they
  - (b) Report risk issues beyond their control or authority to their superiors.

(4) Individual soldiers.

- (a) Report unsafe conditions and acts and corrects the situation when possible.
- (b) Establish a buddy system to keep a safety watch on one another.
- (c) Take responsibility for personal safety
- (d) Work as a team member.
- (e) Modify own risk behavior.

d. Risk management is a five-step cyclic process that is easily integrated into the decision-making process outlined in FM 101-5. The five steps are--

(1) Identify hazards. Identify the most probable hazards for the mission.

(2) Analyze hazards. Analyze each hazard to determine the probability of it causing an accident and the probable effect of the accident. Identify control options to eliminate or reduce the hazard. The Army Standard Risk Assessment Matrix, Figure 1-2, is a tool for assessing hazards.

(3) Make risk decisions. Weigh the risk against the benefits of performing the operations. Accept no unnecessary risks and make risk decisions at the proper level of command.

(4) Implement controls. Integrate specific controls into operation plans (OPLANS), OPORDs, standing operating procedures (SOPs), and rehearsals. Communicate controls to the individual soldier.

(5) Supervise. Determine the effectiveness of controls in reducing the probability and effect of identified hazards, to include a follow up and an AAR. Develop the lessons learned.

		HAZARD PROBABILITY				
		FREQUENT	PROBABLE	OCCASIONAL	REMOTE	IMPROBABLE
		A	B	C	D	E
<b>E F E C T</b>	CATASTROPHIC	I	<b>EXTREMELY HIGH</b>	<b>HIGH</b>		<b>LOW</b>
	CRITICAL	II		<b>HIGH</b>		<b>LOW</b>
	MARGINAL	III	<b>MEDIUM</b>		<b>LOW</b>	
	NEGLIGIBLE	IV	<b>LOW</b>			
<u>Effect</u>						
Catastrophic		Death or permanent total disability, system loss, and major property damage.				
Critical		Permanent partial disability, temporary total disability in excess of 3 months, major system damage, significant property damage.				
Marginal		Minor injury, lost workday accident, compensable injury or illness, minor system/property damage.				
Negligible		First aid or minor supportive medical treatment, minor system impairment.				
<u>Probability</u>						
Frequent		Individual soldier/item.		Occurs often in career/equipment or both service life.		
		All soldiers exposed or item inventory		Continuously experienced.		
Probable		Individual soldier/item		Occurs several times in career/equipment service life.		
		All soldiers exposed or item inventory		Occurs frequently.		
Occasional		Individual soldier/item.		Occurs sometime in career/equipment service life.		
		All soldiers exposed or item inventory		Occurs sporadically or several times in inventory service life.		
Remote		Individual soldier/item		Possible to occur in career/equipment service life.		
		All soldiers exposed or item inventory		Remote chance of occurrence; expected to occur sometime in inventory service life.		
Improbable		Individual soldier/item		Can assume will not occur in career/equipment service life.		
		All soldiers exposed or item inventory		Possible, but not probable; occurs only very rarely.		
<u>Risk Levels</u>						
Extremely High		Loss of ability to accomplish mission.				
High		Significantly degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission standards.				
Medium		Degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission.				
Low		Little or no impact on mission accomplishment.				

**Figure 1-2. Risk-Assessment Matrix**

e. **Fratricide.** It is a component of force protection and is closely related to safety. Fratricide is the employment of weapons with the intent to kill the enemy and/or destroy enemy equipment, which results in the unforeseen and unintentional death, injury, or damage to friendly personnel or equipment. Fratricide is by definition an accident. Risk assessment and management are the mechanisms with which incidence of fratricide can be controlled.

f. The primary causes of fratricide are--

(1) **Direct-fire control-plan failures.** These occur when units fail to develop defensive and, particularly, offensive fire-control plans.

(2) **Land-navigation failures.** These occur when units stray out of sector, report wrong locations, and become disoriented.

(3) **Combat-identification failures.** These failures include gunners or pilots being unable to distinguish thermal and optical signatures near the maximum range of their sighting systems and units in proximity mistaking each other for the enemy under limited-visibility conditions.

(4) **Inadequate control measures.** Units fail to disseminate the minimum maneuver and fire-support control measures necessary to tie the control measures to recognizable terrain or events.

(5) **Reporting failures.** Units at all levels face problems in generating timely, accurate, and complete reports as locations and tactical situations change.

(6) **Weapons errors.** Lapses in individual discipline lead to charge errors, accidental discharges, mistakes with explosives or hand grenades, and similar incidents.

(7) **Battlefield hazards.** Unexploded ordnance (UXO), unmarked or unrecorded minefields, scatterable mines (SCATMINES), and booby traps litter the battlefield. Failure to mark, record, remove, or anticipate these hazards increases the risk of friendly casualties.

g. Fratricide results in unacceptable losses and increases the risk of mission failure. Fratricide undermines the unit's ability to survive and function. Units experiencing fratricide observe these consequences:

(1) Loss of confidence in the unit's leadership.

(2) Increase of self-doubt among leaders.

(3) Hesitation to use supporting combat systems.

(4) Oversupervision of units.

(5) Hesitation to conduct night operations.

(6) Loss of aggressiveness during fire and maneuver.

(7) Loss of initiative.

(8) Disrupted operations.

(9) General degradation of cohesiveness, morale, and combat power.

1-9. **Environmental Protection.** Protection of natural resources has continued to become an ever-increasing concern to the Army. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to decrease and, if possible, eliminate damage to the environment when conducting training. Environmental risk management

parallels safety risk management and is based on the same philosophy. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

a. Identify hazards. Identify potential sources for environmental degradation during analysis of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors. This requires identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying cultural and/or historical artifacts.

b. Assess the hazard. Analyze the potential severity of environmental degradation using the environmental risk-assessment matrixes (Figure 1-3). The severity of environmental degradation is considered when determining the potential effect an operation will have on the environment. The risk impact value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Using the environmental risk-assessment matrixes, quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, high, medium, or low.

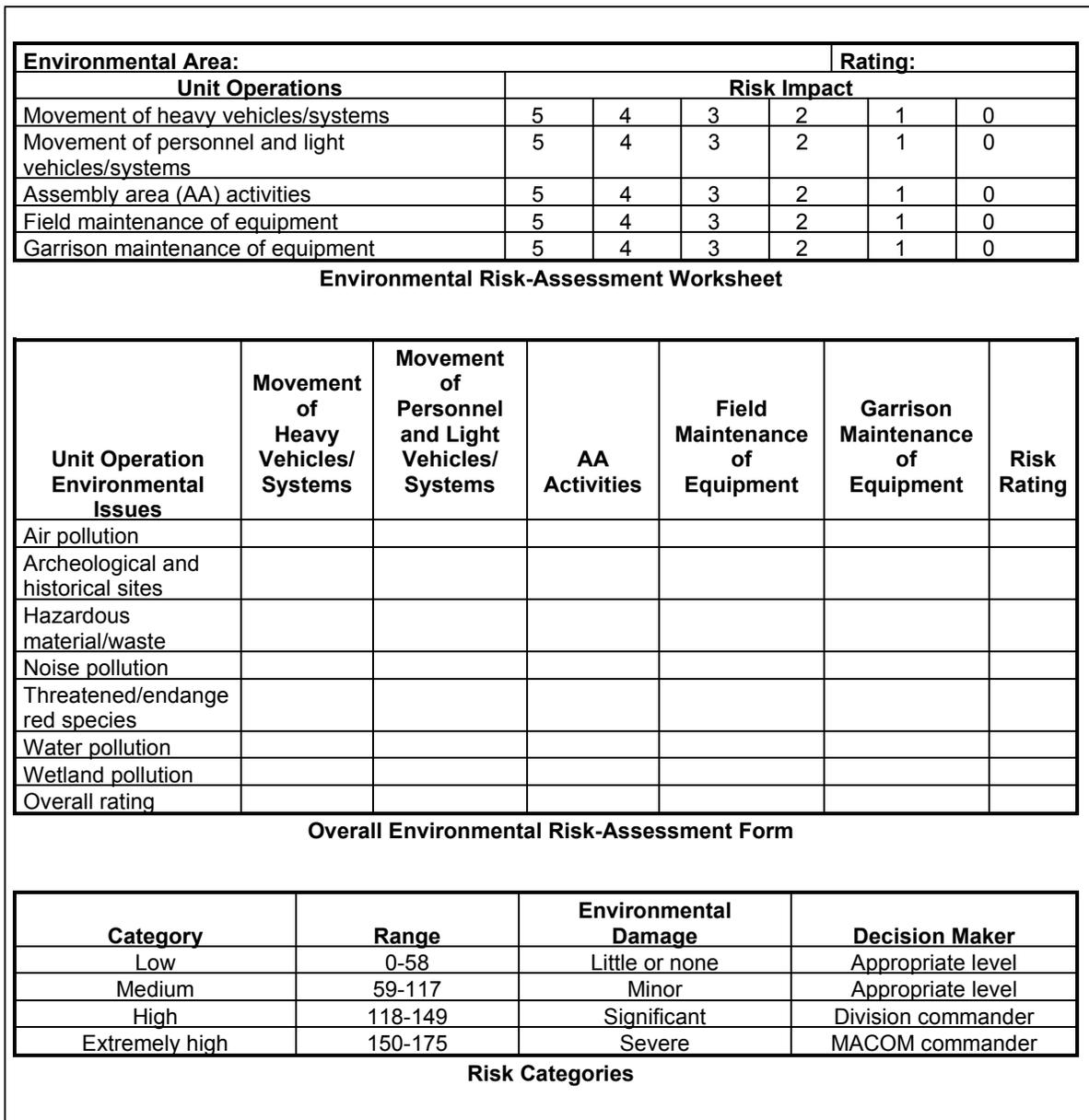


Figure 1-3. Environmental Risk-Assessment Matrix

c. Make environmental risk decisions. Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high environmental risks.

d. Brief the chain of command. Brief the chain of command (to include the installation environmental office, if applicable) on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

e. Implement controls. Implement environmental protection measures by integrating them into plans, orders, SOPs, training-performance standards, and rehearsals.

f. Supervise. Supervise and enforce environmental protection standards.

1-10. Evaluation. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 describe standards that must be met for each task.

a. Evaluations can be internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels and are inherent in all training. External evaluations are usually more formal and are normally conducted by a HQ two levels above the evaluated unit. (See Chapter 6, External Evaluation.)

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is executed. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Too often, leaders do not practice continuous evaluation. Often, soldiers or small units are trained to perform a task to standard, then later, when they execute that task as part of a training exercise, they execute it poorly or incorrectly and are not corrected. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small-group training is easy to do. In higher-level exercises, it is not always feasible to do this with outside evaluators, but should not be totally eliminated. Plan AARs at frequent logical intervals during the exercises (usually after the completion of a major subordinate task). This is a proven technique that will allow you to correct performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind and prevents the reinforcement of bad habits.

d. FM 25-101 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR and detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

1-11. Feedback. Recommendations for improvement of this MTP are requested. Feedback will help to ensure that this MTP answers the training needs of units in the field. There is a questionnaire at the end of this MTP to make it easier to send recommendations and comments.



**CHAPTER 2**

**Training Matrixes**

2-1. General. The training Matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit's personnel.

2-2. Mission to Collective Tasks Matrix. This matrix (Figure 2-2), identifies the missions and their supporting collective tasks. The tasks are listed under the appropriate BOS which are indicated by an **X** in the matrix. The BOS used in this matrix are defined in TRADOC Pam 11-9. A specific mission is trained by identifying collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses.

The mission identification table listed below (Figure 2-1) provides mission identification for the unit.

<b>Mission Identification Table</b>	
<b>Mission Title</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• COUNTERMOBILITY</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• FIGHT AS ENGINEERS</li> <li>• FIGHT AS INFANTRY</li> <li>• MOBILITY AND SURVIVABILITY</li> <li>• PERFORM SURVIVABILITY CONSTRUCTION</li> </ul>

**Figure 2-1. Mission Identification Table**

<b>Collective Tasks</b>		<b>COUNTERMOBILITY</b>	<b>FIGHT AS ENGINEERS</b>	<b>FIGHT AS INFANTRY</b>	<b>MOBILITY AND SURVIVABILITY</b>
<b>Develop Intelligence</b>					
05-2-0027	PERFORM ENGINEER BATTLEFIELD ASSESSMENT (CO)	X	X	X	
05-2-0408	PLAN AND DIRECT AN ENGINEER RECONNAISSANCE	X	X		
05-2-0412	CONDUCT A TECHNICAL RECONNAISSANCE	X	X		
05-2-0414	CONDUCT A TACTICAL RECONNAISSANCE	X	X		
19-3-3105.05-T01A	Process Captured Documents and Equipment	X	X	X	X
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X	X	X	X
<b>Deploy/Conduct Maneuver</b>					
05-1-1200	Fight as Engineers	X	X	X	X
05-2-0025	REPORT OBSTACLE INFORMATION (CO)	X	X		
05-2-0908.05-R01A	Conduct Quartering-Party Operations	X	X	X	X
05-2-1200	Reorganize as Infantry	X	X	X	X
05-2-1215	Fight as Infantry	X	X	X	X
05-3-0305	Construct Vehicle Protective Positions	X	X	X	

<b>Collective Tasks</b>	<b>COUNTERMOBILITY</b>	<b>FIGHT AS ENGINEERS</b>	<b>FIGHT AS INFANTRY</b>	<b>MOBILITY AND SURVIVABILITY</b>
05-3-1232 Secure at a Halt	X	X	X	X
07-1-1923.05-T01A React to Indirect Fire	X	X	X	X
07-2-0333.05-T01A Perform Passage of Lines	X	X	X	X
07-2-1136.05-T02A Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	X	X	X	X
07-2-1301.05-T01A Conduct a Convoy	X	X	X	X
07-3-1123.05-T01A Conduct a Tactical Road March	X	X	X	X
07-3-1125.05-T01A CONDUCT A PASSAGE OF LINES	X	X	X	
07-3-4129.05-T01A Defend a Battle Position	X	X	X	X
07-3-C211.05-T01A Move Tactically	X	X	X	X
12-1-0409.05-T01A Prepare Personnel for Deployment	X	X	X	X
<b>Protect the Force</b>				
03-2-3008.05-T01A Conduct a Radiological or Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance or Survey	X	X	X	X
03-2-C312.05-T01A Conduct a Thorough Decontamination Operation	X	X	X	X
03-3-C201.05-T01A Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, Chemical (NBC) Conditions	X	X	X	X
03-3-C202.05-T01A Prepare for a Chemical Attack	X	X	X	X
03-3-C203.05-T01A Respond to a Chemical Attack	X	X	X	X
03-3-C205.05-T01A Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike	X	X	X	X
03-3-C206.05-T01A Prepare for a Nuclear Attack	X	X	X	X
03-3-C208.05-T01A Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	X	X	X	X
03-3-C209.05-T01A React to Smoke Operations	X	X	X	X
03-3-C222.05-T01A Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack	X	X	X	X
03-3-C223.05-T01A Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack	X	X	X	X
03-3-C224.05-T01A Conduct Operational Decontamination	X	X	X	X
03-3-C226.05-T01A Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area	X	X	X	X

Collective Tasks		COUNTERMOBILITY	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	MOBILITY AND SURVIVABILITY
05-2-0001	PREPARE AN OBSTACLE PLAN	X	X	X	
05-2-0111	CONDUCT MINEFIELD-CLEARING OPERATIONS	X	X	X	
05-2-0114	CONDUCT BREACHING OPERATIONS	X	X		
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	X	X	X	X
05-2-0600	Support a River-Crossing Operation	X	X	X	
05-2-0603	PREPARE EXPEDIENT FORDS	X	X	X	
05-2-0906	Conduct Air-Assault (AA) Operations	X	X		
05-2-0911	Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack	X	X	X	X
05-3-0113	Conduct Self-Extraction from Remotely-Delivered Mines	X	X	X	X
05-3-0115	EMPLACE A HASTY PROTECTIVE ROW MINEFIELD	X	X	X	
05-3-0116	REMOVE HASTY PROTECTIVE ROW MINEFIELD	X	X	X	
05-3-0210	Disable Critical Equipment and Material	X	X	X	X
05-3-0304	Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions	X	X	X	
05-3-0312	Construct Bunkers and Shelters	X	X	X	
05-3-0603	Prepare Expedient Fords	X	X		
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security	X	X	X	X
05-5-0302	Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions	X	X	X	X
07-2-0414.05-T01A	Establish a Company Defensive Position	X	X	X	
09-2-0337.05-T01A	React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)	X	X	X	X
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air-Defense Measures	X	X	X	X
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined-Arms Air-Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms	X	X	X	X
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk-Management Procedures	X	X	X	X
<b>Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>					

Collective Tasks		COUNTERMOBILITY	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	MOBILITY AND SURVIVABILITY
05-2-0042	RECEIVE AND DISTRIBUTE THROUGHPUT SUPPLIES	X	X	X	
05-2-0050	COORDINATE FOR MEDICAL SERVICES	X	X	X	
05-2-0051	Coordinate for Food-Service Support	X	X	X	
05-2-0702	Repair Existing Airfields	X	X		
05-2-1007	CONDUCT ADMINISTRATIVE OPERATIONS	X	X	X	
05-2-1024	Conduct Combat Refueling Operations	X	X	X	X
05-2-1126	COORDINATE FOR ORGANIZATIONAL MAINTENANCE SUPPORT	X	X	X	
05-2-1131	Establish Unit Maintenance Operations	X	X	X	
05-3-1054	Plan/Direct Aerial Logistics Operations	X	X	X	X
08-2-C316.05-T01A	Transport Casualties (for Units without Medical Treatment Personnel)	X	X	X	
08-2-R303.05-T01A	Conduct Battlefield Stress-Reduction and Stress-Prevention Procedures	X	X	X	X
08-2-R315.05-T01A	Perform Field-Sanitation Functions	X	X	X	
10-2-0318.05-T01A	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations	X	X	X	
10-2-0320.05-T01A	Provide Company Supply Support	X	X	X	
11-5-0049.05-T01A	Install a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)	X	X	X	
11-5-0050.05-T01A	Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)	X	X	X	X
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System	X	X	X	X
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties	X	X	X	
12-1-0404.05-T01A	Perform Strength Accounting	X	X	X	
19-3-3106.05-T01A	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)	X	X	X	X
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>					
05-1-0026	Report Engineer Information	X	X	X	X

Collective Tasks		COUNTERMOBILITY	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	MOBILITY AND SURVIVABILITY
05-2-0002	PREPARE AN ENGINEER ESTIMATE (CO)	X	X	X	
05-2-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex	X	X	X	
05-2-1219	CONDUCT COMBAT OPERATIONS	X	X	X	
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)	X	X	X	
05-2-7721	Plan or Control Augmentation Support	X	X	X	
05-3-1018.05-R01A	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	X	X	X	X
11-3-0214.05-T01A	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	X	X	X	X
11-5-1102.05-T01A	Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	X	X	X	X
12-1-0408.05-T01A	Participate in the Operations Order Process	X	X	X	
12-2-0321.05-T01A	Maintain Company Strength	X	X	X	
12-2-0338.05-T01A	Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability	X	X	X	X
12-3-0001.05-T01A	Maintain Platoon Strength	X	X	X	X

Collective Tasks		SURVIVABILITY
<b>Develop Intelligence</b>		
05-2-0027	PERFORM ENGINEER BATTLEFIELD ASSESSMENT (CO)	X
05-2-0408	PLAN AND DIRECT AN ENGINEER RECONNAISSANCE	X
05-2-0412	CONDUCT A TECHNICAL RECONNAISSANCE	X
05-2-0414	CONDUCT A TACTICAL RECONNAISSANCE	X
19-3-3105.05-T01A	Process Captured Documents and Equipment	X
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X
<b>Deploy/Conduct Maneuver</b>		
05-1-1200	Fight as Engineers	X

<b>Collective Tasks</b>	<b>SURVIVABILITY</b>
05-2-0025 REPORT OBSTACLE INFORMATION (CO)	<b>X</b>
05-2-0908.05-R01A Conduct Quartering-Party Operations	<b>X</b>
05-2-1200 Reorganize as Infantry	<b>X</b>
05-2-1215 Fight as Infantry	<b>X</b>
05-3-0305 Construct Vehicle Protective Positions	<b>X</b>
05-3-1232 Secure at a Halt	<b>X</b>
07-1-1923.05-T01A React to Indirect Fire	<b>X</b>
07-2-0333.05-T01A Perform Passage of Lines	<b>X</b>
07-2-1136.05-T02A Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	<b>X</b>
07-2-1301.05-T01A Conduct a Convoy	<b>X</b>
07-3-1123.05-T01A Conduct a Tactical Road March	<b>X</b>
07-3-1125.05-T01A CONDUCT A PASSAGE OF LINES	
07-3-4129.05-T01A Defend a Battle Position	<b>X</b>
07-3-C211.05-T01A Move Tactically	<b>X</b>
12-1-0409.05-T01A Prepare Personnel for Deployment	<b>X</b>
<b>Protect the Force</b>	
03-2-3008.05-T01A Conduct a Radiological or Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance or Survey	<b>X</b>
03-2-C312.05-T01A Conduct a Thorough Decontamination Operation	<b>X</b>
03-3-C201.05-T01A Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, Chemical (NBC) Conditions	<b>X</b>
03-3-C202.05-T01A Prepare for a Chemical Attack	<b>X</b>
03-3-C203.05-T01A Respond to a Chemical Attack	<b>X</b>
03-3-C205.05-T01A Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike	<b>X</b>
03-3-C206.05-T01A Prepare for a Nuclear Attack	<b>X</b>
03-3-C208.05-T01A Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	<b>X</b>
03-3-C209.05-T01A React to Smoke Operations	<b>X</b>
03-3-C222.05-T01A Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack	<b>X</b>

<b>Collective Tasks</b>	<b>SURVIVABILITY</b>
03-3-C223.05-T01A Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack	<b>X</b>
03-3-C224.05-T01A Conduct Operational Decontamination	<b>X</b>
03-3-C226.05-T01A Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area	<b>X</b>
05-2-0001 PREPARE AN OBSTACLE PLAN	<b>X</b>
05-2-0111 CONDUCT MINEFIELD-CLEARING OPERATIONS	<b>X</b>
05-2-0114 CONDUCT BREACHING OPERATIONS	
05-2-0301 Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	<b>X</b>
05-2-0600 Support a River-Crossing Operation	<b>X</b>
05-2-0603 PREPARE EXPEDIENT FORDS	<b>X</b>
05-2-0906 Conduct Air-Assault (AA) Operations	
05-2-0911 Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack	<b>X</b>
05-3-0113 Conduct Self-Extraction from Remotely-Delivered Mines	<b>X</b>
05-3-0115 EMLACE A HASTY PROTECTIVE ROW MINEFIELD	<b>X</b>
05-3-0116 REMOVE HASTY PROTECTIVE ROW MINEFIELD	
05-3-0210 Disable Critical Equipment and Material	<b>X</b>
05-3-0304 Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions	<b>X</b>
05-3-0312 Construct Bunkers and Shelters	<b>X</b>
05-3-0603 Prepare Expedient Fords	<b>X</b>
05-3-0904.05-R01A Establish Jobsite Security	<b>X</b>
05-5-0302 Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions	<b>X</b>
07-2-0414.05-T01A Establish a Company Defensive Position	<b>X</b>
09-2-0337.05-T01A React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)	<b>X</b>
44-1-C220.05-T01A Use Passive Air-Defense Measures	<b>X</b>

<b>Collective Tasks</b>	<b>SURVIVABILITY</b>
44-1-C221.05-T01A Take Active Combined-Arms Air-Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms	<b>X</b>
71-2-0326.05-T01A Perform Risk-Management Procedures	<b>X</b>
<b>Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>	
05-2-0042 RECEIVE AND DISTRIBUTE THROUGHPUT SUPPLIES	
05-2-0050 COORDINATE FOR MEDICAL SERVICES	
05-2-0051 Coordinate for Food-Servive Support	<b>X</b>
05-2-0702 Repair Existing Airfields	
05-2-1007 CONDUCT ADMINISTRATIVE OPERATIONS	
05-2-1024 Conduct Combat Refueling Operations	<b>X</b>
05-2-1126 COORDINATE FOR ORGANIZATIONAL MAINTENANCE SUPPORT	
05-2-1131 Establish Unit Maintenance Operations	<b>X</b>
05-3-1054 Plan/Direct Aerial Logistics Operations	<b>X</b>
08-2-C316.05-T01A Transport Casualties (for Units without Medical Treatment Personnel)	<b>X</b>
08-2-R303.05-T01A Conduct Battlefield Stress-Reduction and Stress-Prevention Procedures	<b>X</b>
08-2-R315.05-T01A Perform Field-Sanitation Functions	<b>X</b>
10-2-0318.05-T01A Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations	<b>X</b>
10-2-0320.05-T01A Provide Company Supply Support	<b>X</b>
11-5-0049.05-T01A Install a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)	<b>X</b>
11-5-0050.05-T01A Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)	<b>X</b>
11-5-0121.05-T01A Provide a Field Cable or Wire System	<b>X</b>
12-1-0403.05-T01A Report Casualties	<b>X</b>
12-1-0404.05-T01A Perform Strength Accounting	<b>X</b>

<b>Collective Tasks</b>	<b>SURVIVABILITY</b>
19-3-3106.05-T01A Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)	<b>X</b>
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>	
05-1-0026 Report Engineer Information	<b>X</b>
05-2-0002 PREPARE AN ENGINEER ESTIMATE (CO)	<b>X</b>
05-2-0003 Prepare an Engineer Annex	<b>X</b>
05-2-1219 CONDUCT COMBAT OPERATIONS	
05-2-7008 Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)	<b>X</b>
05-2-7721 Plan or Control Augmentation Support	<b>X</b>
05-3-1018.05-R01A Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	<b>X</b>
11-3-0214.05-T01A Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	<b>X</b>
11-5-1102.05-T01A Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	<b>X</b>
12-1-0408.05-T01A Participate in the Operations Order Process	<b>X</b>
12-2-0321.05-T01A Maintain Company Strength	<b>X</b>
12-2-0338.05-T01A Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability	<b>X</b>
12-3-0001.05-T01A Maintain Platoon Strength	<b>X</b>

**Figure 2-2. Collective Task to Missions**



## CHAPTER 3

### Mission Outlines/Training Plans

3-1. General. The mission outline illustrates the relationship between the missions and their support tasks. Each outline provides the trainer with a diagram of the unit mission, sample field training exercises (FTXs) and situational training exercises (STXs), and the collective tasks that comprise them.

3-2. Mission Outlines. Since unit training is mission oriented, the mission outline shows how task training contributes to the unit's ability to perform its missions. The mission outlines, Figures 3-1 through 3-5, provide the commander with a visual outline of his unit's missions in a format that facilitates the planning and management of training.

<b>ENGINEER COMPANY COUNTERMOBILITY</b>	
Task Number	Task Title
03-2-3008.05-T01A	CONDUCT A RADIOLOGICAL OR CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL RECONNAISSANCE OR SURVEY
03-2-C312.05-T01A	CONDUCT THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION OPERATIONS
03-3-C202.05-T01A	PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK
05-2-0001	PREPARE AN OBSTACLE PLAN
05-2-0002	PREPARE AN ENGINEER ESTIMATE
05-2-0003	PREPARE AN ENGINEER ANNEX
05-2-0025	REPORT OBSTACLE INFORMATION (COMPANY)
05-2-0042	RECEIVE AND DISTRIBUTE THROUGHPUT SUPPLIES
05-2-1024	CONDUCT COMBAT REFUELING OPERATIONS
10-2-0319.05-T01A	RECEIVE AIRDROP RESUPPLY
71-2-0326.05-T01A	PERFORM RISK-MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES

**Figure 3-1. Countermobility Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER COMPANY FIGHT AS ENGINEERS</b>	
Task Number	Task Title
03-3-C203.05-T01A	RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL ATTACK
03-3-C209.05-T01A	REACT TO SMOKE OPERATIONS
05-1-1200	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS
07-1-1923.05-T01A	REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE
07-2-0414.05-T01A	ESTABLISH A COMPANY DEFENSIVE POSITION

**Figure 3-2. Fight as Engineers Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER COMPANY MOBILITY</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>TASK TITLE</b>
03-2-3008.05-T01A	CONDUCT A RADIOLOGICAL OR CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL RECONNAISSANCE OR SURVEY
03-3-C208.05-T01A	CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA
05-2-0006.05-T01A	PERFORM COMBAT-TRAIL CONSTRUCTION AND CLEARING
05-2-0046.05-T01A	ANALYZE AND DISSEMINATE INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION
05-2-0114.05-T01A	CONDUCT BREACHING OPERATIONS
05-2-0403.05-T01A	CONDUCT A WATER-CROSSING AND SITE-APPROACH RECONNAISSANCE
05-2-0415.05-T01A	ANALYZE BATTLEFIELD INFORMATION
05-2-0600.05-T01A	SUPPORT A RIVER-CROSSING OPERATION

**Figure 3-3. Mobility Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER COMPANY PERFORM SURVIVABILITY CONSTRUCTION</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
03-3-C202.05-T01A	PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK
03-3-C205.05-T01A	PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE
03-3-C206.05-T01A	PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK
05-2-0042.05-T01A	RECEIVE AND DISTRIBUTE THROUGHPUT SUPPLIES
05-2-0111	CONDUCT MINEFIELD-CLEARING OPERATIONS
05-2-0114	CONDUCT BREACHING OPERATIONS
05-2-0600	SUPPORT A RIVER-CROSSING OPERATION
05-2-0603	PREPARE EXPEDIENT FORDS

**Figure 3-4. Perform Survivability Construction Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER COMPANY FIGHT AS INFANTRY</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
03-3-C202.05-T01A	PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK
03-3-C205.05-T01A	PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE
03-3-C206.05-T01A	PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK
07-1-1923.05-T01A	REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE
07-2-0333.05-T01A	PERFORM PASSAGE OF LINES
07-2-0414.05-T01A	ESTABLISH A COMPANY DEFENSIVE POSITION
05-2-1215	FIGHT AS INFANTRY

**Figure 3-5. Fight as Infantry Mission Outline**

## CHAPTER 4

### Training Exercise

4-1. General. Training exercises are used to train and practice the performance of collective tasks. This mission training plan (MTP) contains a sample field training exercise (FTX). It is designed to assist in developing, sustaining, and evaluating the unit's mission proficiency. Table 4-1 lists the FTX by exercise number, title, and page number.

**Table 4-1. FTX exercise**

Exercise Number	Exercise Title	Page
FTX 5-1-E0001	Conduct Mobility Operations	4-1

4-2. FTX. The FTX is designed to provide a training method for the unit to train critical wartime missions. It provides a logical sequence for the performance of the tasks previously trained in the situational training exercises (STXs).

4-3. STX. STXs are short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented, tactical exercises used to train a group of closely related collective tasks. The STX provides the information for training the missions that make up the critical wartime mission. The STX--

- a. Provides repetitive training of missions.
- b. Allows the training to focus on identified weaknesses.
- c. Allows the unit to practice the mission STX before conducting a higher-echelon FTX.
- d. Saves time by providing most of the information needed to develop a vehicle for training.

**ENGINEER COMPANY  
FTX  
5-1-E0001  
CONDUCT MOBILITY OPERATIONS**

1. Objective. This sample FTX trains collective, leader, and individual tasks in the Company's operation (Conduct Mobility Operations).

2. Interface. This FTX supports the task force's (TF) requirement to conduct combat operations.

3. Training Enhancers.

a. The training matrix in Chapter 2 shows the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform the company mission. Training that will improve its ability to perform its mission are--

(1) Planning, controlling, and coordinating mobility operations. Training may be conducted in garrison and the local training areas by one of the following methods:

- (a) Classroom instruction.
- (b) A map exercise (MAPEX) combined with a sand-table exercise.
- (c) A command post exercise (CPX) conducted in garrison.
- (d) A command field exercise (CFX) conducted in a field environment.

- (e) A tactical exercise without troops (TEWT).
  - (f) A communications exercise (COMEX).
  - (g) Simulations and games.
- (2) Establishing an aggressive spirit. An aggressive spirit can be established in a unit and its leaders by engaging in the following activities:
- (a) Aggressive unit sports and a physical-fitness program.
  - (b) Leader and individual confidence courses.
  - (c) Appropriate training films that have a positive, aggressive effect on the soldiers.
  - (d) Awareness of the unit's heritage.
- b. This exercise begins with the receipt of a warning order (WO) and ends upon the completion of area-damage-control (ADC) activities. Figure 4-1 illustrates the FTX's general scenario. Table 4-2 is a suggested scenario and Figure 4-2 is the movement order for the scenario.

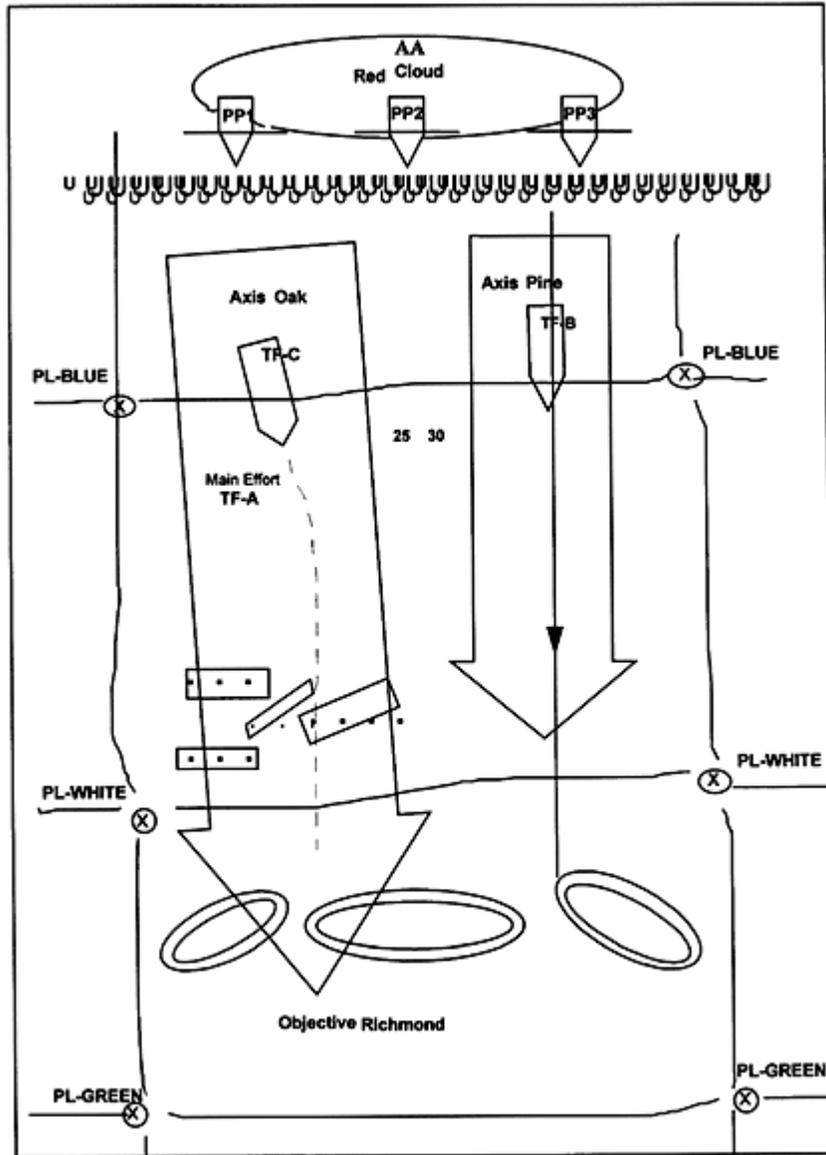


Figure 4-1. General Scenario FTX

**Table 4-2. Sample Suggested Scenario**

<b>Event</b>	<b>Action</b>	<b>Estimated Time</b>
<u>Module 1</u>		
1	Receive a Bridge Warning Order	15 minutes
2	Receive a Bridge Movement Order	30 minutes
3	Plan and Issue a Movement Order	2.5 hours
4	Conduct a Tactical Road March	6 hours
5	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	4 hours
6	Receive a Brigade Warning Order	15 minutes
7	Receive a Brigade Operation Order (OPORD)	2 hours
8	Conduct an After-Action Review (AAR)	1 hour
<u>Module 2</u>		
9	Conduct Precombat Operations	20 hours
	Plan/Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance	8 hours
	Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment	4 hours
	Prepare an Engineer Estimate	3 hours
	Prepare an Engineer Annex Hour	1 hour
10	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
<u>Module 3</u>		
11	Monitor the Conduct of the Attack, Coordinate, and Issue Fragmentary Orders (FRAGOs), as appropriate	9.5 hours
<u>Module 4</u>		
12	Move to the AA	4 hours
13	Conduct a Final AAR	2 hours
*	Defend Against an Air Attack	
*	Control Combat Formations	
*	Prepare an OPORD	
*	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	
*	Manage Battlefield Stress	
*	Use Passive Air-Defense Measures	
*	Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)	
*	Operate a Net-Control Station	
*	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel, Voice Radio Station	
<b>Total time:</b>		<b>69 hours</b>
<b>*Note: These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.</b>		

### Movement Order

1. SITUATION. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn to vicinity NK403087. He is being reinforced and is preparing to counterattack. The division is moving to occupy an AA in preparation of combat operations.
2. MISSION. The 25th Brigade moves by tactical road march via route Monroe, commencing 011600 hours to AA vicinity NK 243567. The order of march is TF A, TF B, and TF C. The interval between serials is 30 minutes. Close on AA no later than 01900 hours.
3. EXECUTION.
  - a. Concept of Movement. TF A will be the lead element with assistance of the military police (MP) for traffic control. TF B will follow 30 minutes after TF A. Brigade HQ will follow 30 minutes after TF B. TF C will follow 30 minutes after brigade HQ.
  - b. Tasks to Subordinate Units. The MPs will provide traffic control for the brigade movement.
  - c. Detailed Timings. None
  - d. Coordinating Instructions.
    - (1) Start point (SP) NK243567 at 011600 hours.
    - (2) Route Monroe listing command post (CP).
    - (3) Quarters party is the 25th Battalion.
    - (4) Vehicle markings according to the unit is standing operating procedure (SOP).
    - (5) Additional information, as required.
4. SERVICE SUPPORT. Per SOP.
5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
  - a. Command.
  - b. Signal.
    - (1) Current signal operation instructions (SOI) are in effect.
    - (2) Visual signals according to the unit's SOP.

**Figure 4-2. Movement Order**

#### 4-4. General Situation.

- a. Contact with the enemy has been broken. He has withdrawn deep to the rear. He is being reinforced and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. The latest intelligence summary (INTSUM)

indicates that the enemy may have a company-size strong point in the brigade sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.

b. This exercise is conducted under all environments during both day and night operations. The company is operating in an arid environment. The company will operate under threat of nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) attacks, ground or air attacks, indirect fire, and electronic warfare (EW).

c. This exercise is conducted under Threat Level I, II, and/or III attacks.

d. The company should be prepared to relocate at least every three to four days.

e. The unit should be prepared to move by echelons while continuing to provide support to the assigned area.

#### 4-5. Special Situation.

a. The lead TF encounters an unexpected obstacle that prevents bypass. Enemy contact has been made. The brigade commander gives the following FRAGO:

**“TFs conduct in-stride breaching operations and continue the attack.”**

b. After completing the breaches, the TFs receive fire from an enemy position and encounter complex obstacles that prevent bypass. The attack is stalled. The unit is ordered to move in.

#### 4-6. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum trainers and observers/controllers (Os/Cs). This exercise can be conducted by the company commander/Executive Officer (XO) or First Sergeant (1SG) who will be the trainer and primary evaluator. At least one other controller/evaluator is required for each engineer platoon and opposing forces (OPFOR) platoon involved in this FTX.

b. OPFOR.

(1) OPFOR is required for the exercise to simulate Threat Level II and III activities.

(2) OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled whenever used.

(3) Multiple Integrated Laser-Engagement System (MILES) can be used or the trainer and O/C can assess the damage to equipment and personnel casualties.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the unit are used. Each trainer and O/C needs a vehicle and a radio. Radios are required for OPFOR vehicles during mounted operations.

d. Maneuver area. Depending on the local training area, an area with a minimum dimension of 15 by 6 kilometers for the hasty attack is desirable. The terrain should offer multiple covered and concealed approaches to the objective area. Using terrain that limits the leader to “geographical and or school solution” does not allow an evaluation of the unit’s ability to conduct a terrain analysis and to select an appropriate course of action.

e. Consolidated Support Requirements. Company support requirements can be calculated by adding the total of the requirements for each participating subordinate element. See Table 4-3.

**Table 4-3. Consolidated Support Requirements for FTX 5-1-E0001**

<b>Ammunition</b>	<b>DODIC</b>	<b>Estimated Basic Load</b>	
5.56 millimeters (mm)	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per squad automatic weapon (SAW)	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
Antitank Weapon-Effect Simulator System (ATWEES) (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulators, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolitions) or 6 per squad	
<b>Demolitions (See the note below.)</b>			
Mine-clearing line charge (MICLIC)		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block trinitrotoluene (TNT)		50 per squad	
Modernized demolition initiator (MDI) M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI ignitors		60 each platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
<b>Other Items</b>			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
<b>CLASS IV</b>			
Concertina wire			
Mines			
<b>Multiple Equipment</b>			
	<b>Company</b>	<b>Evaluators</b>	<b>OPFOR</b>
Armored personnel carrier (APC)	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine-gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small-arms alignment fixture		2	
<b>NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to use) during the FTX.</b>			

4-7. Training-and-Evaluation-Outline (T&EO) Sequence. Table 4-4 list the T&EOs from Chapter 5 that are used to evaluate the FTX.

**Table 4-4. T&EOs Used in Evaluating FTX 5-1-E0001**

<b>Task</b>	<b>Number</b>	<b>Page</b>
Disseminate Intelligence Information	5-1-70400	5-27
Maintain Operations Security	71-3-C0232	5-36
Prepare an Obstacle Plan (Company)	5-1-70001	5-61
Control a Hasty Gap Crossing	5-1-70500	5-65
Plan Breaching Operations	5-1-70520	5-69
Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	5-2-C0301	5-83
Prepare for a Chemical Attack	3-2-C0202	5-86
Conduct Administrative Operations (Company)	5-1-71008	5-124
Perform Unit Maintenance Operations	5-2-71133	5-140
Treat Casualties	8-2-R0337	5-152
Perform Field-Sanitation Measures	8-2-C0315	5-145
Evacuate Casualties	8-2-R0316	5-148
Provide Food-Service Support	10-2-C0317	5-158
Provide Company-Supply Support	10-2-C0320	5-165
Process Personnel and Administrative Action	12-1-C0406	5-198
Prepare an Engineer Annex	5-1-70003	5-198
Prepare an OPORD	5-1-70008	5-201
Control Combat Operations	5-1-70018	5-204
Report Obstacle Information	5-1-70025	5-208
Report Engineer Information	5-1-70026	5-211
Analyze Battlefield Information	5-1-70415	5-214
Control Combined-Arms Breaching	5-1-70048	5-216
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	5-2-71018	5-222
Operate a Net-Control Station	5-4-70020	5-228
Establish Internal Communications	5-4-70024	5-231
Establish External Communications	5-4-70028	5-235
Establish and Operate a Single-Channel, Voice Radio Net	11-2-C0302	5-238
Combat Battlefield Stress	12-1-C0401	5-241
Report Casualties	12-1-C0403	5-244
Conduct Replacement Operations	12-1-C0405	5-246

4-8. OPORD. Figure 4-3 shows a sample OPORD using the outline provided in Chapter 4.

1. SITUATION.

a. Enemy Forces. Contact with the enemy has been broken. He has withdrawn deep to the rear. He is being reinforced and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. The latest INTSUM indicates that the enemy may have a company-size strong point in the brigade sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.

b. Friendly Forces. 5th Division attacks to secure Objective Richmond, then assists passage of the exploitation force (24th Division). This operation will rapidly penetrate the main defensive belt to draw the 10th Independent Tank Regiment (ITR) south and fix it in a zone.

(1) Missions of units on left and right flanks, as required.

(2) Supporting engineer unit missions, as required.

(3) Supporting fires. 4th Battalion is in direct support.

2. MISSION. 25th Brigade conducts a passage of lines and attacks to secure Objective Richmond. On order, the 25th Brigade continues movement forward of Phase Line (PL) Green.

3. EXECUTION.

a. Concept of the Operation. See the overlay developed by the trainer.

(1) Maneuver. 25th Brigade departs AA NK 243567 and conducts a passage of lines through the elements of 3rd Division. It conducts a penetration with two TFs, with one TF following as the brigade's reserve. TF A will be the main effort and attack along Axis Oak. TF B attacks along Axis Pine and is the supporting attack. On order, TF C (trailing along Axis Oak) becomes the main effort and continues the attack to Objective Richmond. The intent is to gain contact with the enemy, locate, and fix his main body so that the division can conduct envelopments to destroy him. It is necessary to destroy his combat outposts. We must quickly reorganize and continue movement until we find the main body. The TF that makes initial contact will attempt to fight through and destroy the enemy. If they cannot, they will provide a base of fire for maneuver by the remainder of the brigade. Movement will continue to PL Green if no contact is gained, and past PL Green, on order.

(2) Fire Support. The priority of fires is to TF A initially and to the TF in contact once contact is made.

(3) Mines, Obstacles, and Fortifications. Critical checkpoints and identified obstacles shown on obstacles overlay.

b. Subunit missions, as required.

c. Engineer. The priority of support is to the two lead TFs. On order, conduct breaching operations in support of the TF in contact. Be prepared to support a hasty defense on order.

**Figure 4-3. Sample OPORD**

- (1) Report all enemy contact.
  - (2) Report all enemy obstacles.
  - (3) Report the crossing of phase lines
  - (4) Additional information as required.
4. SERVICE AND SUPPORT. Per division SOP.
5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
- a. Command.
  - b. Signal.
    - (1) Current SOI.
    - (2) Radio listening silence until initial contact with enemy.

**Figure 4-3. Sample OPORD (continued)**

## CHAPTER 5

### Training and Evaluation Outlines

5-1. General. This chapter contains the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the mission training plan (MTP) and the collective training of the unit. T&EOs are training objectives (task, conditions, and standards) for the collective tasks that support critical wartime operations. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs may be trained separately, in a situational training exercise (STX), in a field training exercise (FTX), or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise.

5-2. Structure. The Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific Battlefield Operating System (BOS).

5-3. Format. The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

- a. Element. This identifies the unit or unit element(s) that perform the task.
- b. Task. This describes the action to be performed by the unit and provides the task number.
- c. References. They are in parenthesis following the task number. The reference that contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference, do not underline the reference.
- d. Iteration. This is used to identify the number of times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The "M" identifies when the task is performed in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.
- e. Commander/leader assessment. This is used by the unit leadership to assess their proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature. Therefore, use all available evaluation data and subunit leader input to develop an assessment of the organization's overall capability to accomplish the task. Use the following ratings:
  - (1) T - Trained. The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.
  - (2) P - Needs practice. The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve the task to standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.
  - (3) U - Untrained. The unit cannot demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.
- f. Task conditions. The conditions describe the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.
- g. Task standards.
  - (1) The task standards state the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training and be understood by every soldier.
  - (2) The trainer or evaluator determines the unit's training status using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the

mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) conditions. The conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common baseline for unit performance.

h. Task steps and performance measures. This is a list of actions that are required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with supporting individual task and their references. An asterisk (\*) to the left of the step number indicates the leader tasks within each T&EO. Under each task step are listed the performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of these task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.

i. GO/NO-GO column. This column is provided for annotating the platoon’s performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an "X" in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a "GO" for the task step to be successfully performed.

j. Task performance/evaluation summary block. This block provides the trainer with a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as "GO." It also provides the evaluator with a means to rate the units demonstrated performance as a "GO" or "NO-GO." It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

k. Supporting individual tasks. This is a list of all supporting individual tasks that are required to correctly perform the task. The reference number, task number, and task title for each individual task are listed.

l. Opposing forces (OPFOR) tasks. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. The standards ensure that OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or "lose" to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished--not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

5-4. Usage. The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task or a group of tasks such as an STX or an FTX. Refer to Figure 5-1.

**Develop Intelligence**

PERFORM ENGINEER BATTLEFIELD ASSESSMENT (CO) (05-2-0027)..... 5-5  
 PLAN AND DIRECT AN ENGINEER RECONNAISSANCE (05-2-0408)..... 5-7  
 CONDUCT A TECHNICAL RECONNAISSANCE (05-2-0412)..... 5-9  
 CONDUCT A TACTICAL RECONNAISSANCE (05-2-0414)..... 5-11  
 Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A)..... 5-13  
 Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A)..... 5-15

**Deploy/Conduct Maneuver**

Fight as Engineers (05-1-1200)..... 5-18  
 REPORT OBSTACLE INFORMATION (CO) (05-2-0025)..... 5-21  
 Conduct Quartering-Party Operations (05-2-0908.05-R01A)..... 5-23  
 Reorganize as Infantry (05-2-1200)..... 5-26  
 Fight as Infantry (05-2-1215)..... 5-28  
 Construct Vehicle Protective Positions (05-3-0305)..... 5-34  
 Secure at a Halt (05-3-1232)..... 5-38  
 React to Indirect Fire (07-1-1923.05-T01A)..... 5-40  
 Perform Passage of Lines (07-2-0333.05-T01A)..... 5-42  
 Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) (07-2-1136.05-T02A) ..... 5-46  
 Conduct a Convoy (07-2-1301.05-T01A)..... 5-49

Conduct a Tactical Road March (07-3-1123.05-T01A).....	5-53
CONDUCT A PASSAGE OF LINES (07-3-1125.05-T01A).....	5-57
Defend a Battle Position (07-3-4129.05-T01A) .....	5-60
Move Tactically (07-3-C211.05-T01A).....	5-63
Prepare Personnel for Deployment (12-1-0409.05-T01A).....	5-66

### Protect the Force

Conduct a Radiological or Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008.05-T01A) .....	5-68
Conduct a Thorough Decontamination Operation (03-2-C312.05-T01A).....	5-70
Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201.05-T01A) .....	5-74
Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A) .....	5-76
Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A).....	5-78
Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A).....	5-80
Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A).....	5-82
Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A).....	5-84
React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A) .....	5-86
Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A) .....	5-88
Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A).....	5-90
Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A) .....	5-92
Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A) .....	5-96
PREPARE AN OBSTACLE PLAN (05-2-0001).....	5-98
CONDUCT MINEFIELD-CLEARING OPERATIONS (05-2-0111).....	5-101
CONDUCT BREACHING OPERATIONS (05-2-0114).....	5-105
Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-2-0301).....	5-110
Support a River-Crossing Operation (05-2-0600).....	5-113
PREPARE EXPEDIENT FORDS (05-2-0603).....	5-117
Conduct Air-Assault (AA) Operations (05-2-0906) .....	5-119
Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-2-0911).....	5-123
Conduct Self-Extraction from Remotely-Delivered Mines (05-3-0113) .....	5-127
EMPLACE A HASTY PROTECTIVE ROW MINEFIELD (05-3-0115).....	5-130
REMOVE HASTY PROTECTIVE ROW MINEFIELD (05-3-0116).....	5-134
Disable Critical Equipment and Material (05-3-0210).....	5-138
Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions (05-3-0304) .....	5-141
Construct Bunkers and Shelters (05-3-0312).....	5-144
Prepare Expedient Fords (05-3-0603).....	5-148
Establish Jobsite Security (05-3-0904.05-R01A).....	5-151
Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions (05-5-0302) .....	5-155
Establish a Company Defensive Position (07-2-0414.05-T01A).....	5-159
React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A) .....	5-162
Use Passive Air-Defense Measures (44-1-C220.05-T01A).....	5-164
Take Active Combined-Arms Air-Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-C221.05-T01A) .....	5-166
Perform Risk-Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A).....	5-169

### Perform CSS and Sustainment

RECEIVE AND DISTRIBUTE THROUGHPUT SUPPLIES (05-2-0042).....	5-171
COORDINATE FOR MEDICAL SERVICES (05-2-0050).....	5-173
Coordinate for Food-Service Support (05-2-0051).....	5-177
Repair Existing Airfields (05-2-0702).....	5-181
CONDUCT ADMINISTRATIVE OPERATIONS (05-2-1007).....	5-185
Conduct Combat Refueling Operations (05-2-1024).....	5-188
COORDINATE FOR ORGANIZATIONAL MAINTENANCE SUPPORT (05-2-1126).....	5-190
Establish Unit Maintenance Operations (05-2-1131).....	5-192
Plan/Direct Aerial Logistics Operations (05-3-1054) .....	5-194
Transport Casualties (for Units without Medical Treatment Personnel) (08-2-C316.05-T01A)....	5-198

Conduct Battlefield Stress-Reduction and Stress-Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.05-T01A) .....	5-201
Perform Field-Sanitation Functions (08-2-R315.05-T01A).....	5-203
Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations (10-2-0318.05-T01A).....	5-205
Provide Company Supply Support (10-2-0320.05-T01A).....	5-207
Install a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT) (11-5-0049.05-T01A) .....	5-209
Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT) (11-5-0050.05-T01A).....	5-211
Provide a Field Cable or Wire System (11-5-0121.05-T01A).....	5-213
Report Casualties (12-1-0403.05-T01A).....	5-216
Perform Strength Accounting (12-1-0404.05-T01A).....	5-218
Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A).....	5-220
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>	
Report Engineer Information (05-1-0026).....	5-222
PREPARE AN ENGINEER ESTIMATE (CO) (05-2-0002).....	5-225
Prepare an Engineer Annex (05-2-0003).....	5-229
CONDUCT COMBAT OPERATIONS (05-2-1219).....	5-232
Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (05-2-7008) .....	5-238
Plan or Control Augmentation Support (05-2-7721).....	5-240
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (05-3-1018.05-R01A) .....	5-243
Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-0214.05-T01A) .....	5-249
Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net (11-5-1102.05-T01A) .....	5-251
Participate in the Operations Order Process (12-1-0408.05-T01A) .....	5-255
Maintain Company Strength (12-2-0321.05-T01A) .....	5-257
Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability (12-2-0338.05-T01A) .....	5-259
Maintain Platoon Strength (12-3-0001.05-T01A).....	5-262

Figure 5-1. List of T&EO's

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** PERFORM ENGINEER BATTLEFIELD ASSESSMENT (CO) (05-2-0027)  
(FM 5-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is supporting a task force (TF). They receive an order or a summary from the supported unit's Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2). Digital units can receive orders through digital means to conduct planning using digital equipment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The commander continuously has an accurate and timely battlefield assessment of the area of operation (AO). Digital units maintain situational awareness (SA) and the common operational picture (COP) through digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander, aided by the company staff, determines the characteristics of the AO and the impact on engineer options.</p> <p>a. Analyzed weather for precipitation and temperature impact on the--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Trafficability for enemy and friendly combat vehicles.</li> <li>(2) Water obstacle depth, the flow rate, and the bank conditions.</li> <li>(3) Ability to dig positions and tank ditches.</li> <li>(4) Fog or the limited visibility impact on the positioning of obstacles.</li> <li>(5) Engineer-vehicle capabilities to maneuver in limited visibility and reduced trafficability and to keep pace with maneuver unit fighting vehicles.</li> <li>(6) Employment of conventional and scatterable mines in extreme weather conditions.</li> </ul> <p>b. Analyzed the terrain.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Observation or fields of fire. Analyzed the impact on obstacle placement (both friendly and enemy) and items, buildings, and/or vegetation needed to be cleared to improve observation.</li> <li>(2) Cover and concealment. Identified concealed locations for engineer equipment and materials (especially during breaching and river-crossing operations). Identified possible combat trails offering cover and concealment from enemy ground, air, and satellite surveillance.</li> <li>(3) Obstacles. Identified existing, natural, and man-made obstacles, and their impact on maneuver, avenues of approach, and the placement of reinforcing obstacles. Evaluated these with respect to friendly and enemy maneuver and the type of unit.</li> <li>(4) Key or decisive terrain. Determined potential engineer tasks required to facilitate friendly control and/or deny enemy control.</li> <li>(5) Avenues of approach. Identified friendly and enemy mobility corridors and avenues of approach based upon the unit. Evaluated engineer actions to enhance or hinder movement on these avenues of approach.</li> </ul> <p>c. Analyzed other characteristics important to the engineer plan.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 2. The commander, working with the supported unit's S2, the engineer battalion's S2, and the assistant division engineer, develops the enemy situation and provides input about the enemy's engineer capability.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Estimated the strength of the enemy's engineer units, including any information (confirmed, suspected, or based on doctrinal techniques) concerning reinforcement to organic enemy engineers from higher enemy echelons.</li> <li>b. Determined the location of the enemy's engineer units and other units having engineer-related capability, including helicopters and artillery units with remotely-delivered mine capability.</li> <li>c. Assessed enemy capabilities for breaching, gap crossing, obstacle emplacement, survivability, and emplacing remotely-delivered mines (from aircraft or artillery).</li> <li>d. Evaluated recent and present significant activities, including engineer battlefield tactics and techniques to identify weaknesses and/or strengths.</li> <li>e. Predicted the possible and most likely courses of action (COAs) on the enemy, and the impact of the enemy's engineer situation on his COA.</li> </ul> <p>3. The commander develops a situational template of the enemy's engineer operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stated probable levels of support and the enemy's engineer plan.</li> <li>b. Incorporated weather and terrain data.</li> <li>c. Developed an overlay of anticipated enemy obstacles, fortifications, and the enemy's other significant engineer activities.</li> </ul> <p>4. The commander incorporates the situational template.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Incorporated it into the supported unit's commander and staff estimate.</li> <li>b. Incorporated it into the engineer staff estimate.</li> <li>c. Incorporated it into the engineer annex.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** PLAN AND DIRECT AN ENGINEER RECONNAISSANCE (05-2-0408)  
 (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer company is tasked to plan and direct an engineer reconnaissance of a designated area. The area is secure, but enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company plans and directs platoon reconnaissance missions to gather sufficient information to fulfill the reconnaissance objectives. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The company plans the reconnaissance mission as defined in the battalion's operation order (OPORD).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gathered supporting intelligence data, such as map products and aerial photos.</li> <li>b. Established reconnaissance objectives, the main supply route (MSR), obstacle locations, general trafficability, decontamination points, and bivouac sites.</li> <li>c. Identified the platoon(s) to perform the mission(s).</li> <li>d. Established the time, the distance, and the size of the zone(s) or route(s) to reconnoiter.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The company commander determines the reconnaissance method.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected route reconnaissance when time was a critical factor.</li> <li>b. Selected zone reconnaissance when cross-country trafficability was important.</li> <li>c. Selected an area reconnaissance when the mission required specific information about a defined area.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: An area reconnaissance is more thorough and time-consuming than a zone reconnaissance.</p> <p>* 3. The company commander briefs the platoon(s) on the reconnaissance mission(s).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conveyed the objective of the reconnaissance.</li> <li>b. Defined the area or route to cover.</li> <li>c. Described the methods of reconnaissance.</li> <li>d. Directed a hasty or deliberate reconnaissance.</li> <li>e. Provided additional guidance (attention to fords, bridges, bivouac sites, and contaminated areas).</li> <li>f. Ensured checkpoints were positioned for progress reports, assistance, and communications checks.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The platoon leader ensures that unit members have the minimum essential material needed to conduct the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the unit members had a map of the area, an overlay paper, a compass, and a tape measure.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Ensured that the unit members received appropriate forms: Department of the Army (DA) Form 1248, 1249, 1250, 1251, 1252, and 1711-R.</p> <p>c. Ensured that a secure mode, communications check radio was on hand.</p> <p>* 5. The company operations noncommissioned officer (NCO) reviews the reconnaissance report(s).</p> <p>a. Ensured that the platoon(s) accomplished the objective(s).</p> <p>b. Ensured that members recorded dimensions (in meters) on the overlay; for example, road width, bridges, overhead clearance, constrictions to travel way, fords, tunnels, or underpasses.</p> <p>c. Ensured that members recorded and annotated critical terrain features and obstacles using the appropriate symbols (see Field Manual [FM] 5-170) on the overlay at their geographical location (slopes, curves, fords, ferries, bridges, reduction in travel way, and constrictions).</p> <p>* 6. The company operations NCO updates the company terrain analysis and overlay. Prepares to brief the commander on the results of the reconnaissance mission(s).</p> <p>* 7. The company commander briefs the battalion commander and staff on the mission(s). Submits all reports to the battalion's Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) within the time constraints.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT A TECHNICAL RECONNAISSANCE (05-2-0412)  
 (FM 5-170) (FM 5-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is in continuous operation during daylight or darkness. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The technical reconnaissance team must conduct a reconnaissance in order to verify technical data in the task force (TF) battle space. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element leader plans the technical reconnaissance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the mode of transportation and coordinated with the TF engineer when aviation assets were required.</li> <li>b. Conducted a map reconnaissance that included start points (SPs), release points (RPs), and routes.</li> <li>c. Requested security teams to support the reconnaissance team effort.</li> <li>d. Performed troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>e. Reviewed the tactical standard operating procedure (TSOP).</li> <li>f. Requested an enemy-situation brief from the TF's Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2).</li> </ul> 2. The reconnaissance team leader prepares for the technical reconnaissance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reconnoitered the specific route.</li> <li>b. Identified the travel-way width.</li> <li>c. Established the route type.</li> <li>d. Established the military load classification (MLC).</li> <li>e. Recorded terrain features along the route on the overlay.</li> <li>f. Identified critical points along the route, such as terrain features or obstacles.</li> <li>g. Recorded data on the proper form using the proper symbols and graphics.</li> <li>h. Submitted data to the commander.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** DISRUPT A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0021)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting a route reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt a squad/section conducting a route reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from reaching its assigned destination. 4. Surprises the squad/section. 5. Inflicts casualties on the unit.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT A TACTICAL RECONNAISSANCE (05-2-0414)  
 (FM 5-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is in continuous tactical operations during daylight or darkness. The commander directs the company to conduct a tactical reconnaissance in order to gather essential data and intelligence. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The task-force (TF) engineer, along with the commander, prepares the reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan. Reconnaissance teams must verify intelligence requirements (IR) and priority intelligence requirements (PIR). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The officer in charge (OIC) or the noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) reviews the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) and performs troop-leading procedures. Briefs the reconnaissance team on the specifics of the mission.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the reconnaissance as mounted or dismounted.</li> <li>b. Identified the method of reconnaissance as hasty or deliberate.</li> <li>c. Relayed the objective of the reconnaissance.</li> <li>d. Explained time and distance factors.</li> <li>e. Instructed on noise and light discipline.</li> <li>f. Specified the method of communication to be used.</li> <li>g. Provided instructions on the action of the security team upon contact.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The engineer reconnaissance team verifies observation and fields of fire, cover and concealment, obstacles, key terrain, and avenues of approach (OCOKA).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked vehicle positions.</li> <li>b. Inspected the routes that the battalion will use once the line of departure (LD) or line of crossing (LC) is crossed.</li> <li>c. Validated fire-control references, including the target reference points (TRPs) and the engagement areas (EA).</li> <li>d. Checked to ensure that the LDs and phase lines (PLs) could be seen.</li> <li>e. Inspected the terrain at the battalion flank and rear.</li> <li>f. Investigated the danger areas encountered.</li> <li>g. Identified known or suspected enemy locations.</li> <li>h. Confirmed the current and projected enemy situation in the reconnaissance area.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** DISRUPT A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE (5-OPFOR-0021)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting a route reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt a squad/section conducting a route reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from reaching its assigned destination. 4. Surprises the squad/section. 5. Inflicts casualties on the unit.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A)  
 (FM 19-40)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The enemy's equipment and documents have been captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element processes all captured equipment and documents based on disposition instructions and within the time standards established by higher headquarters (HQ). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element tags all captured equipment and documents. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Described the type of equipment and/or documents, such as maps, photos, rifles, radios, and so forth.</li> <li>b. Annotated the date and time of capture.</li> <li>c. Provided the place (grid coordinates) of capture.</li> <li>d. Noted the capturing unit.</li> <li>e. Furnished the circumstances of the capture.</li> <li>f. Identified the prisoner's name on the tag, if the items were taken from the enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).</li> </ul> * 2. The element leader reports the capture of the equipment and documents to higher HQ. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Described the type of equipment and/or documents.</li> <li>b. Stated the date and time of capture.</li> <li>c. Identified the capturing unit.</li> <li>d. Furnished the place (grid coordinates) of the capture.</li> </ul> * 3. The element leader disposes of the equipment and documents according to the guidance received from higher HQ. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Destroyed, secured, evacuated, or abandoned the equipment.</li> <li>b. Evacuated the documents through the chain of command to intelligence personnel.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-217-35-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A)  
 (AR 530-1) (AR 380-5) (FM 19-30)  
 (FM 24-33) (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1)  
 (FM 34-60)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is operating where the enemy can detect it. The enemy can employ electronic warfare (EW) measures and air- and ground-reconnaissance units. It can also use the local populace and enemy intelligence agencies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon prevents the enemy from learning its strength, dispositions, intentions, and any essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) or from surprising its main body. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The leaders check or perform information-security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disseminated the information on a need-to-know basis.</li> <li>b. Prohibited the fraternization with civilians, as applicable.</li> <li>c. Conducted alerts, deployment preparations, and loading operations to minimize detection.</li> <li>d. Ensured that maps contained only the minimum-essential information.</li> <li>e. Conducted inspections and gave briefings to ensure that personnel did not carry any details of military activities in their personal materials, such as letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs.</li> <li>f. Sanitized all planning areas and positions before departure.</li> </ul> <p>2. The platoon performs camouflage discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used natural concealment and camouflage materials, whenever possible, to prevent ground and air observation.</li> <li>b. Moved on covered and concealed routes.</li> <li>c. Covered all reflective surfaces and unit markings with nonreflective material, such as cloth, mud, or a camouflage stick.</li> <li>d. Covered or removed all vehicle markings.</li> </ul> <p>3. The platoon camouflages the individual's positions and equipment to prevent detection from 35 meters or greater and camouflages the equipment to prevent detection from 100 meters or greater.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the foliage was not stripped near the unit's position.</li> <li>b. Camouflaged the earth berms.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the camouflage nets were properly erected.</li> <li>d. Avoided crossing near footpaths, trails, and roads.</li> <li>e. Erased any tracks leading into the positions.</li> <li>f. Ensured that the vehicles that were parked in the shadows were moved as the shadows shifted.</li> <li>g. Replaced and replenished the camouflage, as needed.</li> <li>h. Avoided movement in the area to prevent ground and air detection.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The platoon employs communications security (COMSEC), and the company's net control station (NCS) enforces COMSEC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Enforced the procedures in the signal operation instructions (SOI) and the signal supplemental instructions (SSI), such as challenges, authentications decoding, and call signs and frequencies. The platoon ensured that the monitored traffic did not reveal information to the enemy.</li> <li>b. Employed approved radiotelephone operator (RATELO) procedures.</li> <li>c. Followed the COMSEC procedures, such as keeping transmissions short, using the lowest possible power settings, using directional antennas, changing transmission patterns, and maintaining radio silence.</li> <li>d. Followed the procedures for operations during jamming.</li> <li>e. Made maximum use of the messenger and wire service.</li> <li>f. Used visual signals according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> </ul> <p>5. The platoon employs physical-security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employed the observation posts (OPs).</li> <li>b. Employed the counter-reconnaissance patrols.</li> <li>c. Followed the stand-to procedures.</li> <li>d. Employed mines and obstacles, when permitted.</li> <li>e. Tied in with adjacent units for coordination and fire.</li> <li>f. Used the challenge and password.</li> <li>g. Limited the access into the unit's area.</li> <li>h. Safeguarded weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents.</li> <li>i. Picked up the litter.</li> <li>j. Employed the air guards.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The platoon leader, and all leaders, enforces noise and light discipline.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-325-4425	EMPLOY AN M18A1 CLAYMORE MINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-325-4426	RECOVER AN M18A1 CLAYMORE MINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0801	CHALLENGE PERSONS ENTERING YOUR AREA	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE	STP 21-1-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Fight as Engineers (05-1-1200)  
 (FM 5-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting continuous tactical operations in all weather conditions. The commanding general directs the battalion to fight as engineers. Digital units have performed functionality checks of all digital systems. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** According to the battalion's standing operating procedure (SOP), the engineer battalion reorganizes as an engineer or infantry battalion within the required period of time. All equipment and personnel not used in this role move to an equipment park or are attached to another unit. The reorganized battalion receives augmentation from air defense, fire support, antitank units, and a medical element if available. Digital units have the capability to send and receive information via frequency modulated (FM) and digital means to conduct combat operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The battalion commander decides who will be the unit's fire-support officer (FSO).</p> <p>2. The FSO makes immediate coordination for air-defense artillery, artillery support, and other necessary support for the unit.</p> <p>3. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) updates the personnel status. If required, requests personnel to bring the battalion to its authorized strength.</p> <p>4. If necessary, the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) organizes scout elements from organic assets to accomplish assigned missions.</p> <p>5. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) prepares for infantry-type missions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Requested any support that the FSO needed; for example, air-defense artillery, mortars, field artillery, and antitank elements.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Initiated the estimation process for infantry-type missions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Designated the company's assembly areas (AAs).</p> <p>6. The Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) prepares field and combat trains.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Organized a support platoon consisting of all fuel, ammunition, and cargo hauling assets to support the line companies' new needs.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Set up material storage areas containing vehicle turnarounds. Camouflaged the areas according to the tactical situation.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Requested additional Class V (ammunition) required by organic weapons and antitank systems, as necessary.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">d. Consolidated unit mess and maintenance assets under the battalion's control in the field trains.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">e. Designated the location of the engineer equipment park and the controlling team chief, if necessary.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Located the equipment park in a covered and concealed position.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Located the equipment park on defensible terrain.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat-service-support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK:** Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Disrupt Assembly-Area (AA) Activities (5-OPFOR-0013)

**CONDITION:** Intelligence reports indicate platoon- and company-size enemy units are operating in the opposing forces (OPFOR) area of operations. Enemy units can defend from assembly areas with direct fire, antiarmor weapons, and indirect fire. The enemy has close air support (CAS) and nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) capabilities.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR locates and disrupts the enemy's AA activities. 1. Locates the element's AA. 2. Probes the AA with squad- or team-size elements. 3. Inflicts more than 5 percent casualties on the element. 4. Disrupts the element's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the element's allotted time).

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** REPORT OBSTACLE INFORMATION (CO) (05-2-0025)  
 (FM 3-34.2) (FM 101-5) (FM 20-32)  
 (FM 5-100) (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives obstacle and scatterable-mine (SCATMINE) information from subordinate elements and the battalion. Digital units have performed functionality checks of digital systems and have updated data bases to provide a common operating picture (COP). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Higher headquarters (HQ) and subordinate units have accurate and timely information on obstacles in the area of operations (AO). Digital units gain intelligence information via FM or digital systems, ABCS. Submission of the location of obstacles and reports are submitted through ABCS. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element receives obstacle information required by the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) and may include:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. A status report, called an obstacle document (OBSDOC), that gives the serial number, type, location (eight-digit and coordinate), progress, completion date of obstacles, and the date and time the report was generated.</li> <li>b. A SCATMINE record and report or SCATMINE warning report. See Field Manual (FM) 20-32.</li> <li>c. A map sheet(s).</li> <li>d. The enemy situation.</li> <li>e. Additional assets or equipment required. Notified the supply section and the platoons of the type, quantity, and personnel.</li> <li>f. Execution of the obstacle (time, unit, type, location, and serial number).</li> <li>g. Obstacle hand-off (time, unit, type, location, and serial number).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element reports obstacle information to the supported unit and the higher engineer command.</li> <li>3. The officer in charge (OIC) or the noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) reports to the commander on the type of obstacles; the unit responsible for emplacement, progress, completion date, hand-off, and execution of the obstacles; the enemy situation; and the execution and plotting of the commander's guidance on scatterable mines. See FM 20-32.</li> <li>4. The OIC or the NCOIC briefs the team on the type, serial number, location, emplacement progress, and possible hand-off of obstacles; relocation of material; emplacement and execution of scatterable mines; and the unit and/or location of tasked elements, if assistance is required.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>5. The OIC or the NCOIC reports to the supported or parent unit (based on the command or support relationship) on the requirements for material, equipment, a recovery vehicle, maintenance support, obstacle material, communications equipment, the mission location, a map sheet(s), and platoons needing assistance.</p> <p>6. The operations noncommissioned officer (NCO) records the obstacle information from the platoons and the battalion's Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Updated the situational awareness (SA) and obstacle overlay with the team locations; emplaced, executed, and handed-off obstacles; intended and executed SCATMINE targets; and encountered obstacle locations.</li> <li>b. Maintained an accurate status of emplaced, executed, handed-off, and encountered obstacles, and intended and executed SCATMINE targets, by maintaining an updated and current digital SA OBSDOC.</li> <li>c. Maintained files of sent reports.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with the battalion's S3 to provide updates on the status of obstacles emplaced by the company, obstacle execution, SCATMINES, obstacle enhancement, and any required assistance.</li> </ul> <p>7. The element leader briefs the supported commander or higher engineer on SCATMINES, reserve targets, and other obstacles, to include their status, location, self-destruct times, dimensions, delivery means, and hand-off.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Conduct Quartering-Party Operations (05-2-0908.05-R01A)  
 (FM 71-1) (FM 101-5) (FM 20-32)  
 (FM 5-10) (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A unit is directed to move to a new location and establish an assembly area (AA). Digital units have performed functionality checks of all digital systems. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The quartering party departs ahead of the unit's main body and completes all tasks in the new AA before the main body arrives. The unit moves all personnel and equipment to the assigned position within the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). The unit reports through digital means (FBCB2) their location. The time required to perform this task is increased when performed in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader organizes the quartering party. The unit leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC).</li> <li>b. Selected a security element or coordinated for security to be provided by the supported maneuver unit.</li> <li>c. Selected subordinate-element representatives according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>d. Organized a nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) reconnaissance party from the NCOIC, the security element, and the subordinate-element representatives to satisfy the threat conditions.</li> <li>e. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>f. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>g. Reviewed the unit's SOP and tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</li> <li>h. Conducted risk-management and safety briefings according to the unit's SOP or TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. The quartering party conducts rehearsals on minesweeping operations, actions on contact for the security teams, and movement guide procedures.                      NOTE: Conduct a rehearsal using one of the following rehearsal types: the confirmation brief, the back brief, the combined-arms rehearsal, the battle drill, or the SOP rehearsal (for additional information, see Field Manual [FM] 101-5).</p> <p>* 3. The quartering-party leader conducts a map reconnaissance, identifying the start point (SP), potential ambush sites, checkpoints (CPs), rest stops, and the AA.                      NOTE: The route used by the quartering party can be the same as the route used by the unit's main body, as long as the security was maintained along the route. If security was not maintained, the main body should conduct a route clearance to the new AA.</p> <p>4. The quartering party prepares the vehicles for the convoy. The quartering party--</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the vehicles and equipment.</p> <p>b. Loaded the vehicles according to the load plan.</p> <p>c. Prepared the troop-carrying vehicles for combat survivability by covering the floors with a double layer of sandbags.</p> <p>d. Maintained a guard force to prevent theft and sabotage.</p> <p>* 5. The quartering-party leader briefs the convoy personnel. The quartering-party leader--</p> <p>a. Briefed the convoy route, to include the medical- and maintenance-support locations and the destination.</p> <p>b. Provided a strip map to each vehicle commander (or driver).</p> <p>c. Briefed the prescribed rate of march, the catch-up speed, and the distance between the vehicles.</p> <p>d. Briefed the accident and breakdown procedures.</p> <p>e. Briefed the limited-visibility movement procedures.</p> <p>f. Briefed the chain of command and the radio frequency.</p> <p>6. The quartering party relocates to the new AA. The quartering party--</p> <p>a. Traveled separately from, and ahead of, the main body.</p> <p>b. Reported the route limitations and other specified command interest items to the next higher commander.</p> <p>7. The quartering party reconnoiters the area and notifies the commander of the conditions. The quartering party--</p> <p>a. Reported the position of the enemy forces.</p> <p>b. Located the areas containing mines, booby traps, and NBC contamination.</p> <p>c. Evaluated the terrain conditions, to include trafficability, cover and concealment, and the availability of adequate routes into and out of the AA.</p> <p>d. Evaluated the communication system required for the AA.</p> <p>* 8. The quartering-party leader notifies the commander of the condition of the area. The quartering-party leader--</p> <p>a. Received orders and prepared the area for the main body (satisfactory conditions).</p> <p>b. Requested additional instructions from the next higher commander and moved to the alternate AA or found another location and repeated Subtask 7 (unsatisfactory conditions).</p> <p>9. The quartering party prepares the area to receive the main body. The quartering party--</p> <p>a. Secured the area.</p> <p>b. Marked or removed any obstacles and mines.</p> <p>c. Organized the area, divided it into sectors for each unit, and selected locations for the command post.</p> <p>d. Improved and marked the entrances, exits, and internal routes.</p> <p>e. Marked the vehicle positions.</p> <p>10. Each element representative from the quartering party guides his element, without delay, from the release point (RP) to that element's sector of the AA (mounted, if possible).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

#### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

**TASK:** Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** Disrupt Assembly-Area (AA) Activities (5-OPFOR-0013)

**CONDITION:** Intelligence reports indicate platoon- and company-size enemy units are operating in the opposing forces (OPFOR) area of operations. Enemy units can defend from assembly areas with direct fire, antiarmor weapons, and indirect fire. The enemy has close air support (CAS) and nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) capabilities.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR locates and disrupts the enemy's AA activities. 1. Locates the element's AA. 2. Probes the AA with squad- or team-size elements. 3. Inflicts more than 5 percent casualties on the element. 4. Disrupts the element's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the element's allotted time).

**TASK:** DISRUPT QUARTERING-PARTY OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0017)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting quartering-party operations. It has established an assembly area (AA) but has not moved in the main body.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt quartering-party operations and infiltrate the enemy's AA. 1. Locates the quartering party and the AA. 2. Surprises the main body. 3. Penetrates the AA with squad-size probes. 4. Inflicts personnel casualties and vehicle damage. 5. Disrupts the unit's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the unit's allotted time).

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Reorganize as Infantry (05-2-1200)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7J) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A company is conducting continuous tactical operations. The battalion commander directs the unit to reorganize as infantry. A time schedule is provided. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company reorganizes into combat trains and combat elements. The company is prepared to conduct infantry operations within the specified time requirements.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander initiates a reorganization. The company commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued a warning order and conducted troop-leading procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Developed a tentative plan based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) while the subordinate units prepared for the infantry operations.</li> <li>(2) Conducted a reconnaissance in order to complete the plan and verbally issued the completed order in a fragmentary-order (FRAGO) or an operation-order (OPORD) format.</li> <li>(3) Conducted the appropriate equipment and troop inspections.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Evaluated the status of the ongoing engineer missions and issued instructions for the termination of those missions.</li> <li>c. Organized the company into two elements (combat and combat trains), designated the composition of each element, and determined the assembly location and the time for each element.</li> <li>d. Assigned command and control (C2) responsibilities for each combat element.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The company commander organizes the combat elements. The company commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Retained the existing organizational structure of the engineer platoon as the basic fighting element.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Platoons are configured internally according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Coordinated with battalion personnel for augmentation from maneuver and fire-support elements.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with the augmentation forces, prepared plans to incorporate them within the combat element, and determined their missions. Coordinated the command and support relationships and the combat-service-support (CSS) requirements and procedures.</li> <li>d. Assembled the combat element in the required configuration, at the correct location, and within the designated time.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The company commander organizes the combat trains element. The company commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the battalion for augmentation from combat support elements.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Coordinated with the augmentation forces, prepared plans, incorporated them into the combat trains, and determined the-- (1) Missions of the augmentation forces. (2) C2 procedures. (3) CSS requirements and procedures. (4) Requirements for additional Class V supplies required for organic weapons and augmenting mortars, including antitank systems. c. Set up material storage areas containing vehicle turnaround areas and camouflaged the areas according to the tactical situation. d. Determined the disposition of engineer equipment and operators. e. Assembled combat trains elements in the required configuration, at the correct location, and within the time designated by the commander.  * 4. The company commander designates the composition of combat and combat trains elements.  * 5. The company commander reports that the unit is prepared to receive infantry missions.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Fight as Infantry (05-2-1215)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A company has received an operation order (OPORD) to reorganize as infantry and is preparing to engage in combat operations. Digital units can send or receive orders through digital means and conduct planning using the digital capability. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company organizes the platoons for combat and conducts defensive or retrograde operations according to the higher headquarter's directives. Digital units send and receive reports or orders using digital capabilities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander conducts troop-leading procedures after receiving the OPORD to fight as infantry. The company commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the mission and planned the use of any available time following the 1/3- to 2/3-time rule.</li> <li>b. Issued the warning order and ensured that all leaders were kept informed of their duties.</li> <li>c. Consulted with his leaders and made tentative plans.</li> <li>d. Initiated the necessary movement to prepare the subordinate units for and incorporate them into the upcoming mission.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The company commander utilizes fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to initiate these actions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Reconnoitered the area of operations.</li> <li>f. Incorporated any additional details concerning the operation (following a reconnaissance mission) and completed the plan.</li> <li>g. Supervised the preparation for and the execution of the mission.</li> <li>h. Issued the order for the mission, in verbal or in written form.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The company commander orders the company to conduct defensive operations.</p> <p>* 3. The company commander posts security elements to provide local security.</p> <p>4. The company identifies the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The key terrain.</li> <li>b. The enemy's avenue of approach.</li> <li>c. The location of the company's battle position (BP), the company's target reference points (TRPs), and the engagement area.</li> <li>d. The limits of the company's BP and the company or team's sectors of fire.</li> <li>e. The location of the artillery preplotted targets.</li> <li>f. The primary and supplementary firing positions which--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enabled the company to deliver effective fire, on TRPs and engagement area, at optimal ranges.</li> <li>(2) Provided long-range observation and interlocking fire between the adjacent units.</li> <li>(3) Provided a line of sight to other company or team BPs to provide mutually supporting fire.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(4) Provided cover and concealment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>g. The covered and concealed routes between the primary and supplementary firing positions.</li> <li>h. The covered and concealed routes into and out of the primary BP to subsequent BPs.</li> <li>i. The locations for the observation posts (OPs) to provide observation of the platoon's sector of fire.</li> <li>j. The location of the existing obstacles and the positions for reinforcing the obstacles.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The company commander develops a rough draft of a company or team fire plan.</p> <p>* 6. The company commander returns to the assembly area (AA) or moves the company to the rear of the BP, meets with the subordinate leaders, and issues an OPORD. The company commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued an OPORD for occupying the BP, using the rough draft of the fire plan or a terrain model as a guide (in the AA).</li> <li>b. Issued an OPORD for occupying the BP from a vantage point, using the rough draft of the fire plan as a guide (in the BP).</li> </ul> <p>7. The company or team moves to the rear and the flanks of the assigned BP. The company or team--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved to a hidden position at the rear of the BP and executed actions at a halt.</li> <li>b. Manned the company's OPs.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The company or team commander issues a five-paragraph oral OPORD from a vantage point, using the rough sketch of the fire plan.</p> <p>* 9. The platoon leaders return to their units and, using hand-and-arm signals, have the drivers start their engines simultaneously.</p> <p>*10. The company or team commander issues orders for occupying the BP. The company or team commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ordered the platoon leader to position the vehicles, without leaving tracks, in fighting positions that were difficult for the enemy to detect.</li> <li>b. Checked the consolidated range cards and the sketches of the platoon fire plans to make sure that there were no weak points between the platoon or flank companies.</li> <li>c. Finalized the fire plan in relation to the terrain to make sure that the engagement area was set on the enemy's avenue of approach, covered by mutually-supporting interlocking fire from platoons, and located between flank companies.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with the flank companies to ensure coverage.</li> <li>e. Forwarded the company fire plan to the battalion task force (TF) commander for a final check of mutually-supporting interlocking fire covering the engagement area.</li> <li>f. Received reports from the platoon leaders reference established platoon BPs and reported the information to the battalion TF. The reports were submitted within the defend-by time stated in the OPORD.</li> <li>g. Referred to the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and ordered the platoons to continue to improve their BP.</li> </ul>		
<p>NOTE: Do the most critical tasks first in case the enemy attacks before the defend-by time. The defend-by time is a calculated estimate of when the enemy may attack. The enemy may attack before or after this time.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*11. The company or team commander performs tactical planning and, based on the factors of the METT-TC, plans for a deliberate or hasty occupation of a BP in a built-up area. The company or team commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a reconnaissance of the BP and analyzed the threat force's method of attacking a built-up area.</li> <li>b. Analyzed the BP to identify the--               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Location of the checkpoints, the phase lines, and the building numbers, as identified in the OPORD or FRAGO.</li> <li>(2) Observation sites and the fields of fire on the enemy's avenue of approach.</li> <li>(3) Primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions on the perimeter of the built-up area.</li> <li>(4) Positions that would provide cover and concealment.</li> <li>(5) Location of OPs that provide 360-degree security for a three-dimensional battlefield.</li> <li>(6) Covered and concealed routes into and out of the firing positions and BPs which could not be blocked by blow down from structures.</li> <li>(7) The location of obstacles (existing and reinforcing), buildings with basements, fire hazards, sewers, viaducts, or bridges.</li> <li>(8) Structures that dominate the built-up area.</li> <li>(9) The locations of the firing positions, in depth, throughout the built-up area.</li> <li>(10) Areas to integrate the dismounted infantry into the company or team defense.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Coordinated with the adjacent units for dismounted support (as necessary) and ensured that the units were tied in with the company or the team's forces.</li> <li>d. Upgraded the hasty defense and improved the BP, as time permitted.</li> <li>e. Planned for indirect fire in the engagement area and along the possible avenue of approach, in front of and behind the obstacles. The smoke was planned by the fire-support team (FIST).</li> </ul> <p>*12. The company or team commander develops a company or team fire plan. The company or team commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed a fire plan as part of a hasty or deliberate BP occupation.</li> <li>b. Located the platoons and oriented the company or team.</li> <li>c. Developed a fire plan that included the company or the team's sector, the platoon and OP's positions, obstacles, indirect-fire targets, and final protection fire (FPF), if allocated.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the platoon's fire plans were received in a timely manner. Made an updated copy of the company or team's fire plan for the XO and the platoon leaders (as time permitted).</li> <li>e. Verified, based on METT-TC, the plan by conducting rehearsals for counterattack missions.</li> <li>f. Upgraded the fire plan, to include the fire plans for platoon supplementary firing positions.</li> <li>g. Forwarded a copy of the fire plan to the higher headquarters.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Check the complete direct and indirect fire plan as if you are the enemy attacking the position. Look for weak points in the defense and make corrections.</p> <p>*13. The company or team commander and the platoon leaders organize the engagement area. The company or team commander and platoon leaders--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reconnoitered the engagement area (physically), covering as many options as possible to mass fire.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) The enemy's avenue of approach.  (2) The locations of the existing and reinforcing obstacles.  (3) The key terrain.  (4) The TRPs.  (5) The artillery preplots.</p> <p>b. Organized the engagement area to mass direct and indirect fire. The obstacles were tied into terrain and hidden to slow the forward velocity of the enemy regiment.</p> <p>c. Organized fire in the engagement area, 800 to 2,000 meters from the defending company or team, based on the METT-TC. The fire covered the obstacles so that the breaching vehicles were engaged.</p> <p>d. Used fire to interlock. The platoons and the company or team mutually supported each other with direct fire.</p> <p>e. Positioned the company or team around the engagement area. One company or platoon was centered in the engagement areas and one was positioned on both the right and the left flank.</p> <p>f. Ensured that the TRPs were marked for easy reference. Used the existing terrain, when possible.</p> <p>g. Shifted the platoons or the firing positions to cover the dead space and the weak points.</p> <p>h. Developed an obstacle plan that--</p> <p>(1) Tied obstacles into the existing terrain features.  (2) Slowed the enemy movement.  (3) Concealed obstacles from the enemy.  (4) Included mine-fighting positions that the enemy could have used to his advantage or destroyed.  (5) Positioned obstacles on the enemy's main avenue(s) of approach.  (6) Covered obstacles by directing artillery to the front and rear of them.  (7) Placed obstacles in the engagement area so that the personnel in the rear and on the flanks could fire simultaneously into the front of the enemy regiment, using direct and indirect massed fire. Repositioned the personnel stopped in front of the obstacles.</p> <p>*14. The company or team commander is briefed, by the platoon leaders, on the engagement area(s) in each sector and any changes made to the origin.</p> <p>*15. The company or team commander executes the company defensive mission. The company or team commander--</p> <p>a. Acknowledged the report or mission from the battalion TF commander.  b. Analyzed the spot report (SPOTREP) or mission using the METT-TC to determine the--</p> <p>(1) Size of the enemy force.  (2) Location of the force in relation to the company or team's position.  (3) Direction of enemy movement.  (4) Avenue(s) of approach that the enemy could use to enter the company or team's sector or the battalion TF's engagement area.  (5) Enemy's arrival time at the company or team's trigger point.</p> <p>c. Alerted the OPs with a SPOTREP, which included all of the information given by the battalion TF commander and any additional information.  d. Directed the company or team to remain in hidden positions until the OP identified the source of the smoke dust columns or the sounds.  e. Ordered the company or team and the platoons to immediately prepare to engage the enemy.  f. Received SPOTREPs from the platoon leaders.  g. Reported to the battalion TF commander.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Controlled the indirect fire on the enemy as they advanced.</p> <p>NOTE: This step may also be performed by the FIST.</p> <p>i. Ordered the platoons into hull-down positions, gave the order to fire, and returned the platoons to the hull-down position after the enemy was destroyed.</p> <p>*16. If the enemy elements are too strong, the company or team commander receives SPOTREPs from the platoon leaders containing the number and types of vehicles that reached the company or team breaking point. The SPOTREP may also contain orders from the battalion TF commander to displace to a subsequent BP. The company or team commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested FPF, if scheduled.</li> <li>b. Took direction from the battalion TF commander on whether to continue the mission or displace. If the battalion TF gave no guidance, the company commander or team commander coordinated with the flank company or teams and displaced.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The company or team commander must coordinate with the flank company or teams so they are not flanked by the enemy.</p> <p>17. The company or team commander receives a FRAGO from the TF commander ordering a counterattack. The company or team--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted prep-to-fire checks.</li> <li>b. Checked the weapon systems for proper loading.</li> </ul> <p>*18. The company or team commander coordinates with the platoon leaders reference continuing the mission.</p> <p>*19. The company or team commander monitors the mission. The company or team commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the size, the type, and the location of the enemy elements.</li> <li>b. Identified the locations of the enemy or friendly mines and obstacles.</li> <li>c. Determined the most covered and concealed routes for the company or team to assault the flanks of the enemy without masking the fire of supporting elements.</li> </ul> <p>*20. The counterattack company or team commander coordinates the counterattack route with the defending company or teams (if deviating from the OPORD route).</p> <p>*21. The defending company or team commanders alert their platoons that the counterattacking force is going to attack the enemy from the right or the left flank or from the rear.</p> <p>*22. The defending company or team commanders remind their defending platoon leaders of the restrictive-fire line (RFL) and to control the direct fire.</p> <p>23. The counterattacking company or team stays outside of or on the far side of the RFL.</p> <p>*24. Upon receiving the order to counterattack, the company or team commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ordered the company or team to begin the counterattack along the identified routes.</li> <li>b. Ordered the company or team to a position from which it could engage the enemy's flank or rear (for counterattack by fire).</li> <li>c. Ordered the company or team to move rapidly to the flank or the rear position of the enemy's trail battalions and close in on them, firing at high speed (for counterattack by fire and maneuver).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The tanks, if available, led and destroyed the enemy tanks.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) The armored personnel carriers (APCs) followed and destroyed the light vehicles and the dismounted infantry. (3) The defending company or team commanders controlled fire behind the RFL. d. The defending companies of the battalion TF continued to fire upon the enemy and halted the enemy elements advancing from the front. 25. The company or team conducts consolidation and reorganization activities to continue the mission. *26. The company or team commander reports to the higher headquarters according to the field standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Construct Vehicle Protective Positions (05-3-0305)  
 (FM 5-103) (FM 20-3) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element supports a maneuver unit in establishing a defensive position. The supported unit has occupied the position. The element has organic equipment. Digital units have performed functionality checks and have a common operational picture (COP) and situational awareness (SA) Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon constructs vehicle positions providing protection from direct and indirect fire without restricting the operational capability of the system. The dimensions of the positions and the time standards for construction are according to Field Manual (FM) 5-103. Digital units can send and receive reports via FM or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The platoon leader coordinates with the maneuver commander to determine the type and location of positions. When possible, he sites the positions on reverse slopes, in heavy woods, or in natural defilades.</li> <li>* 2. The platoon leader estimates the completion time based on the type and number of maneuver-unit vehicles requiring positions. See FM 5-103 to compute estimates.</li> <li>* 3. The platoon leader prioritizes the construction based on the projected completion time.</li> <li>4. The platoon reports the intermediate status and the completion of the construction to higher headquarters (HQ).                         <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the parapet positions for field artillery or for air-defense artillery (ADA) weapons.                                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Constructed the parapet with the material removed from the excavation. Built it low enough so that it allowed direct howitzer fire or so that it did not affect the fields of fire for ADA weapons.</li> <li>(2) Stabilized the parapet walls with a waterproof cover or sandbags to prevent deterioration caused by the muzzle blast and the weather.</li> <li>(3) Camouflaged the position with natural vegetation or netting.</li> <li>(4) Ensured that the positions were the correct length, the correct width, the correct depth, and the correct parapet thickness. See FM 5-103 for field artillery and ADA position dimensions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Prepared the deep-cut vehicle positions for protection of the support vehicles.                                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Positioned the vehicles so the tops were at least 30.5 centimeters below the surrounding wall-rim top.</li> <li>(2) Prepared the positions, opened on both ends, with an optional rear wall.</li> <li>(3) Placed the camouflage netting across the top of the position.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Ensured that the positions were the correct dimensions (length, width, and depth) according to FM 5-103.		
* 5. The platoon leader reports mission completion to higher HQ according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

#### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

**TASK:** Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK:** Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Disrupt Construction of Vehicle Fighting Positions (5-OPFOR-0020)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate the enemy is constructing vehicle fighting positions within its defensive area. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt the enemy's efforts to establish vehicle fighting positions.

1. Locates the defensive area. 2. Surprises the main body. 3. Penetrates the defensive area with squad-size probes. 4. Inflicts casualties on the unit. 5. Destroys vehicles. 6. Disrupts the unit's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the unit's allotted time).

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Secure at a Halt (05-3-1232)  
 (FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is moving while mounted when the unit leader orders a halt. Digital units have functional digital systems. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Within one minute, vehicle commanders move their vehicles into a herringbone or a coil formation, using available cover and concealment. Digitally capable units report to higher locations using Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) and Maneuver Control System (MCS). The unit is not surprised by the enemy. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader gives the signal to halt the unit. The unit halts in a-- a. Herringbone formation (temporary halt during a tactical road march or movement in a column formation). b. Coil formation (prolonged halt or when 360 degree security is necessary). NOTE: The unit leader ensures that each vehicle commander positions his vehicle using available cover and concealment as part of the selected formation within 1 minute.  * 2. The vehicle commander ensures that security is maintained by either keeping the element mounted or dismounting all or part of the element based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). a. Ensured that element members, including air guards, continued to observe designated sectors. b. Ensured that members man and direct crew-served weapons toward assigned sectors. c. Ensured that the dismounted element members assumed hasty fighting positions.  3. The vehicle commanders take appropriate action at the halt. a. Maintained visual, digital, or radio communication with the unit leader. b. Conducted during-operation maintenance according to the applicable technical manual (TM) as time permitted. c. Refueled the vehicles and resupplied needed supplies, if necessary.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE****SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK:** Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat-service-support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK:** Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** React to Indirect Fire (07-1-1923.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-7) (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7J)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is moving, halted, or occupying a defensive position. Any member of the platoon gives the alert INCOMING or a round impacts on or near their location. Digital units have performed functionality checks of all digital systems. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Within two seconds of the alert, the leader designates the direction and the distance to move. The platoon moves to the specified location. Digital units having advanced digital capability, report the units new location (analog or digitally) as required by the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving mounted.</li> <li>2. The element leader gives the direction and the distance for the unit to move; for example, 3 o'clock, 200 meters.</li> <li>3. The vehicle commanders repeat the INCOMING to squad personnel.</li> <li>4. The element personnel close all hatches.</li> <li>* 5. The element drivers move rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the leader.</li> <li>6. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving dismounted.                         <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that if vehicles with mounted weapons were available, the vehicle--                                 <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Halted as closely as possible to the dismounted team, allowing personnel to mount.</li> <li>(2) Moved rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the squad leader.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Ensured that if vehicles were not available, dismounted personnel, keeping low, ran out of the impact area in the direction and at the distance ordered by the squad leader.</li> </ol> </li> <li>7. The element reacts to indirect fire when in a defensive position.                         <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved the vehicles immediately out of the impact area to alternate positions.</li> <li>b. Protected personnel by having each one go under the overhead cover of their fighting positions, if dismounted.</li> </ol> </li> <li>8. The element's members move to designated rally points according to the element's operation order (OPORD).</li> <li>9. The element establishes immediate security at the designated rally point.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
10. The element consolidates and reorganizes.		
11. The element leader submits a shelling report (SHELREP) or a mortar bombing report (MORTREP). Digital units having enhanced reporting capability report using digital capability.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Disrupt Enemy Movement and Operations using Persistent and Nonpersistent Chemical Weapons (5-OPFOR-0015)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft along selected supply routes and key bases in the rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts enemy movement and operations using persistent and nonpersistent chemical weapons. 1. Delivers chemical agents in low and/or dense wooded areas. 2. Delays the movement of enemy supplies and equipment to the forward areas. 3. Restricts the movement of the enemy units in the rear area. 4. Channels the movement of enemy units into predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminates enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflicts a high rate of casualties on enemy forces.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Perform Passage of Lines (07-2-0333.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 21-60) (FM 24-19)  
 (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 7-7)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is required to conduct a passage of lines. The element is operating as a separate unit. The enemy can attack with indirect fire, aircraft, or company-size mounted or dismounted forces. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company moves all personnel and equipment through the stationary unit no later than the time specified in the order. The unit's main body is not surprised by the enemy during the departure from friendly lines. The unit sustains no casualties from friendly fire. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader receives the operation order (OPORD).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated planning for the operation.</li> <li>b. Conducted coordination for the operation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The passing element leader meets with the stationary element leader.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Arranged for a specific time.</li> <li>b. Determined the meeting location.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The passing element leader or his authorized representative coordinates the passage through and the reentry of lines with the forward element leader or his authorized representative.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that personnel from both elements were aware of each element's identification.</li> <li>b. Kept the stationary element leader informed of the size of the passing element.</li> <li>c. Coordinated the times of departure and return.</li> <li>d. Defined the area of operations (AO).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The passing leader or his authorized representative coordinates with the stationary leader.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Exchanged enemy intelligence information.</li> <li>b. Completed a joint reconnaissance of the position.</li> <li>c. Explained the passing element's scheme of maneuver.</li> <li>d. Coordinated recognition signals for the passage, both near and far.</li> <li>e. Planned for guides and passage control measures.</li> <li>f. Coordinated security measures for the passage.</li> <li>g. Designated fire-support (FS) responsibilities and fire plans.</li> <li>h. Exchanged information on the terrain and the existing obstacles.</li> <li>i. Determined when and where the battle handover occurs.</li> <li>j. Coordinated combat-service support (CSS) for the items left on the position.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. Both leaders coordinate specific control measures for the passage.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Planned the locations of the contact points.</li> <li>b. Pointed the locations of the passage points.</li> <li>c. Identified release points (RPs) and the battle handover line.</li> <li>d. Exchanged call signs, frequencies, code words, signals, and challenge and passwords.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. Both leaders perform a leader reconnaissance of the passage area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Located the passage-of-lines points.</li> <li>b. Identified the obstacle locations and safety lines.</li> <li>c. Pointed out the RPs.</li> <li>d. Reconnoitered the assembly area (AA) for the rearward passage.</li> <li>e. Identified the contact points.</li> <li>f. Walked the stationary element positions.</li> <li>g. Identified combat support (CS) and CSS elements (command posts [CPs], observation posts [OPs], and antiarmor and mortar positions).</li> <li>h. Ensured that the leader's reconnaissance and other activities did not reveal the operation to the enemy.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. The passing leader checks with other leaders who will be operating in the same or adjacent areas.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Exchanged intelligence information on the enemy.</li> <li>b. Exchanged terrain data.</li> </ul> <p>8. The passing element arrives in the stationary element area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved into a secure position as designated in the primary coordination meeting with the stationary leader.</li> <li>b. Started final preparations for the passage of lines.</li> </ul> <p>9. The passing element leader issues a contingency plan before moving out to make final coordination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the element on what was happening and what was going to happen.</li> <li>b. Confirmed the chain of command.</li> <li>c. Prescribed actions to be taken on contact.</li> <li>d. Briefed actions to be taken in the absence of the leader.</li> <li>e. Provided a time schedule, a suspense list, and any limits on actions.</li> </ul> <p>*10. The passing element leader completes coordination with the stationary element leader.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Confirmed recognition signals for the passage, both near and far.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with the guides.</li> <li>c. Confirmed traffic-control measures.</li> <li>d. Confirmed security measures for the passage.</li> <li>e. Collocated both leaders to observe critical areas, make timely decisions, and facilitate battle handover.</li> </ul> <p>11. The passing element moves to a position near the point of contact.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved at the designated time.</li> <li>b. Provided cover and concealment during movement and at the position near the point of contact.</li> </ul> <p>12. The passing element's security team passes through the passage lanes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Linked up with the guides from the stationary element.</li> <li>b. Moved with the guides from the contact points through the passage lanes and passage points to the RPs.</li> <li>c. Cleared the area forward of the RPs to the first covered and concealed position.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Reported when the area was secure.</p> <p>13. The remainder of the passage element moves through the passage lanes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved forward to the RPs.</li> <li>b. Identified and accounted for passage personnel (as confirmed by the guides) as the element passed through the RP.</li> <li>c. Ensured that movement was continuous throughout the passage.</li> <li>d. Executed a security halt after the company had moved beyond the friendly element's final protective fires (FPF).</li> <li>e. Executed the movement of the executive officer (XO), the first sergeant (1SG), and the platoon sergeant (PSG) from the RP forward, only after the leader was sure that he did not have to withdraw through the passage point.</li> </ul> <p>14. The passing element makes a reentry through the friendly lines.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Halted the element and established the reentry rally point.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE to the National Guard (NG): If in contact with the enemy, the element does not halt. The contact party or guides from the stationary element lead the element through the passage points, or long-range signals are used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Contacted the forward element by radio and told them, by the use of a prearranged code word, that the element was ready to reenter. (The leader may opt to keep the element outside of friendly lines until daybreak.)</li> <li>c. Acknowledged receipt of the message.</li> </ul> <p>15. The forward element directs a security team on an azimuth and distance to the contact point.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established contact with the stationary element guides using far- and near-recognition signals.</li> <li>b. Signaled the element forward or went back and led the element to the passage point.</li> <li>c. Counted and identified each element as it passed through the passage point (1SG or XO and PSG).</li> </ul> <p>16. The element, led by a guide from the stationary element, moves through the passage point and to the AA behind the friendly element. The leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that casualties were treated and evacuated upon arrival at the AA.</li> <li>b. Reported to the stationary element CP; provided tactical information concerning the area of responsibility.</li> </ul> <p>17. The passing leader links up with his element in the AA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the element for movement to a secure area.</li> <li>b. Led the element to a secure area.</li> <li>c. Conducted the debriefing.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
071-326-0515	SELECT A MOVEMENT ROUTE USING A MAP	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5775	COORDINATE WITH AN ADJACENT PLATOON	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-329-1006	NAVIGATE FROM ONE POINT ON THE GROUND TO ANOTHER POINT WHILE DISMOUNTED	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0820	ANALYZE TERRAIN	STP 21-24-SMCT
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) (07-2-1136.05-T02A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)  
 (FM 24-35-1) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)  
 (TC 24-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element has been given the order to move and occupy an AA in preparation for combat operations. The enemy has the capability to attack with indirect fire, combined-arms support, and platoon-size elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The quartering party completes AA preparations and guides the element's main body into its respective positions no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Movement into the AA is uninterrupted; elements are not held up outside the AA. The enemy does not surprise the element's main body. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader organizes a quartering party.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected the quartering party personnel.</li> <li>b. Determined the requirement for a combat vehicle and crew, based on transportation and security requirements.</li> <li>c. Determined the essential equipment needed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader briefs the quartering party.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the location of the AA.</li> <li>b. Gave specific instructions upon arrival at the AA.</li> <li>c. Relayed the time of the main body's arrival at the AA.</li> <li>d. Identified the order of march.</li> <li>e. Relayed the nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) conditions.</li> <li>f. Issued a contingency plan in case of enemy contact.</li> <li>g. Established the MOPP level.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The element quartering party moves along the route of march.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained security.</li> <li>b. Reconnoitered the route of march from the start point (SP) to the release point (RP) using the digital situational awareness (SA) overlay on Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS).</li> <li>c. Monitored for NBC contamination.</li> <li>d. Marked the obstacles and bypass routes.</li> <li>e. Reported critical information to the element quartering party leader.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The quartering party moves into the element AA and prepares the area for the element's arrival.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected and marked the routes from the RP to the new location.</li> <li>b. Selected and posted the guides in time to meet the main body.</li> <li>c. Marked the entrances, exits, and internal routes.</li> <li>d. Marked the vehicle positions where maximum cover, concealment, and dispersion provided 360-degree security.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Marked or removed the mines and obstacles. f. Organized and posted local security.</p> <p>5. The element occupies the AA. a. Moved the quartering party guides (waiting in covered and concealed positions) to selected or designated areas without halting. b. Established and maintained local security from air and ground forces.</p> <p>6. The element establishes the AA's perimeter. a. Established the priority of work, which may vary by the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) and the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). b. Positioned the vehicles and crew-served weapons to cover the sectors of fire. c. Established the observation posts (OPs) on the critical avenues of approach. d. Established digital and frequency modulated (FM) communications between all positions. Used wire communications, if the time and situation permitted. e. Prepared the range cards. f. Constructed individual and crew-served fighting positions. g. Cleared the fields of fire. h. Camouflaged the positions. i. Emplaced the chemical-agent alarms and the early-warning devices.</p> <p>7. The element performs internal operation of the AA. a. Conducted preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the vehicles and equipment. b. Distributed the ammunition, rations, water, supplies, and special equipment. c. Established the personal-hygiene and field-sanitation sites. d. Maintained noise, light, and camouflage discipline. e. Instituted the rest plan for element members and leaders. f. Inspected the AA.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader coordinates with the element on the left and the right as a minimum. a. Established the responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach between adjacent elements. b. Exchanged information on the OP locations and the element's signals. c. Coordinated local counterattacks. d. Developed a defensive plan and forwarded it to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>9. The leaders develop contingency plans. a. Developed an evacuation plan. b. Developed a plan of action on enemy contact.</p> <p>10. The unit conducts rehearsals. a. Rehearsed the evacuation plan. b. Rehearsed the plan of action on enemy contact.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE	STP 21-24-SMCT
04-3302.01-0003	Conduct a Reconnaissance	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
04-3306.01-0007	Practice Noise, Light, and Litter Discipline	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
071-326-0503	MOVE OVER, THROUGH, OR AROUND OBSTACLES (EXCEPT MINEFIELDS)	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-0513	SELECT TEMPORARY FIGHTING POSITIONS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-0515	SELECT A MOVEMENT ROUTE USING A MAP	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5703	CONSTRUCT INDIVIDUAL FIGHTING POSITIONS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-5704	SUPERVISE CONSTRUCTION OF A FIGHTING POSITION	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5705	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5775	COORDINATE WITH AN ADJACENT PLATOON	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-329-1006	NAVIGATE FROM ONE POINT ON THE GROUND TO ANOTHER POINT WHILE DISMOUNTED	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0852	CLEAR A FIELD OF FIRE	STP 21-1-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Conduct a Convoy (07-2-1301.05-T01A)  
 (FM 55-30) (FM 21-16)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An operation order (OPORD) requires the element to move and conduct operations at a new location. The OPORD provides the new location that the element must move to. There is a possibility of enemy contact with threat patrols up to platoon and company size. Digital units have completed a functionality check of digital systems and they are operational. Threat-mounted forces have been operating in the area through which the route passes. The company's standing operating procedure (SOP) is available and contains movement readiness levels and current loading plans. The convoy may be conducted during daylight or darkness, including blackout conditions. Radio and visual signals will be used for convoy control. The column may conduct halts. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element conducts the convoy and arrives at its new location by the time specified in the OPORD. Orders, overlays and locations can be sent via digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander conducts a map reconnaissance using all available position/navigation (POS/NAV) and terrain analysis capabilities, to include space-based assets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Indicated the start point (SP).</li> <li>b. Identified the locations of friendly units.</li> <li>c. Pointed out the potential ambush sites.</li> <li>d. Identified the checkpoints.</li> <li>e. Pointed out the sites to be used for scheduled halts.</li> <li>f. Indicated the release point (RP).</li> </ul> <p>2. The reconnaissance party conducts a route reconnaissance using all available POS/NAV and mapping capabilities available.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Wore the designated MOPP gear.</li> <li>b. Activated the automatic chemical alarm.</li> <li>c. Monitored radiation-monitoring devices.</li> <li>d. Verified the map information.</li> <li>e. Listed the capacities of bridges and underpasses.</li> <li>f. Listed the locations of culverts, ferries, fording areas, steep grades, and possible ambush sites.</li> <li>g. Prepared the map overlay.</li> <li>h. Computed the travel time.</li> <li>i. Prepared the strip map.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The convoy commander coordinates with higher headquarters (HQ) for the following required support:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Military Police (MP).</li> <li>b. Medical.</li> <li>c. Fire support (FS).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Engineer.</li> <li>e. Maintenance contact team.</li> <li>f. Additional requirements, as required.</li> </ul> <p>4. The company prepares the vehicles and the equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS).</li> <li>b. Corrected minor deficiencies.</li> <li>c. Reported major deficiencies.</li> <li>d. Hardened the vehicles using sandbags or other authorized materials.</li> <li>e. Covered unit identification markings on the vehicles and personnel.</li> <li>f. Covered or removed the reflective surfaces.</li> <li>g. Placed the antennas at their lowest height.</li> <li>h. Turned radio volumes and squelches to their lowest setting, consistent with operational requirements.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The convoy commander organizes the convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned cargo-vehicle positions.</li> <li>b. Positioned the control vehicles without setting a pattern.</li> <li>c. Assigned the recovery vehicles position.</li> <li>d. Arranged the hardened vehicles near the head of the convoy.</li> <li>e. Specified passenger locations.</li> <li>f. Appointed air guards.</li> <li>g. Organized the trail party element.</li> <li>h. Provided vehicle-position listings to the trail party leader.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The convoy commander briefs the convoy personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided strip maps to each vehicle driver.</li> <li>b. Identified the convoy chain of command.</li> <li>c. Detailed the convoy route.</li> <li>d. Prescribed the rate-of-march speed and the catch-up speed.</li> <li>e. Specified convoy intervals.</li> <li>f. Identified the scheduled halts.</li> <li>g. Briefed the accident and breakdown procedures.</li> <li>h. Briefed the immediate-action security measures.</li> <li>i. Briefed the blackout-condition procedures.</li> <li>j. Specified the location of medical support.</li> <li>k. Specified the location of maintenance support.</li> <li>l. Briefed the communication procedures.</li> <li>m. Specified the location and identification of the destination.</li> </ul> <p>7. The convoy crosses the SP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crossed at the specified time.</li> <li>b. Verified that the vehicles crossed the SP.</li> <li>c. Forwarded the SP-crossing report to the convoy commander when the entire unit had passed the SP.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The convoy commander provides the convoy information to higher HQ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the SP-crossing time.</li> <li>b. Reported the checkpoints clearance, when crossed.</li> <li>c. Pointed out the data that conflicted with maps.</li> <li>d. Employed the correct signal operation instruction (SOI) codes in all transmissions.</li> <li>e. Reported the RP-crossing time.</li> </ul> <p>9. The convoy maintains march discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the designated march speed.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Maintained proper vehicle intervals.</li> <li>c. Crossed checkpoints as scheduled.</li> <li>d. Reacted correctly to the convoy commander's signals.</li> <li>e. Maintained security throughout the movement and during halts.</li> </ul> <p>10. The company conducts a scheduled halt.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stopped the column at the prescribed time.</li> <li>b. Maintained the prescribed vehicular intervals.</li> <li>c. Moved the vehicles off the road.</li> <li>d. Established local security.</li> <li>e. Performed PMCS.</li> <li>f. Inspected vehicle loads.</li> <li>g. Departed at the specified times.</li> </ul> <p>11. The company conducts an unscheduled halt.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alerted the march column.</li> <li>b. Reported the stoppage to higher HQ.</li> <li>c. Maintained prescribed vehicular intervals.</li> <li>d. Established local security.</li> <li>e. Reported resumption of the march to higher HQ.</li> </ul> <p>12. The convoy moves under blackout conditions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided a visual adjustment period.</li> <li>b. Prepared the vehicles for blackout conditions.</li> <li>c. Maintained the prescribed vehicle distances.</li> <li>d. Wore night-vision goggles (specified personnel).</li> <li>e. Wore regular eye-protection goggles.</li> <li>f. Employed ground guides during poor visibility periods.</li> </ul> <p>13. The trail party recovers disabled vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the disabled vehicles.</li> <li>b. Repaired disabled vehicles, when possible.</li> <li>c. Towed the vehicles.</li> <li>d. Reported vehicle status to the convoy commander.</li> </ul> <p>14. The convoy moves through urban areas.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified weight, height, and width restrictions.</li> <li>b. Employed close-column formation.</li> <li>c. Obeyed traffic-control directions.</li> <li>d. Employed direction guides at critical intersections.</li> </ul> <p>15. The convoy crosses the RP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crossed at the specified time.</li> <li>b. Verified that the vehicles had crossed the RP.</li> <li>c. Forwarded the crossing report to higher HQ.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

ARTEP 5-217-35-MTP

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Conduct a Tactical Road March (07-3-1123.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is ordered to conduct a tactical road march. The enemy (no larger than a squad or platoon size) can assault mounted or dismounted, employ indirect fires, or employ air support. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the start point (SP), follows the prescribed route without deviation (unless required otherwise by enemy action or at the direction of higher headquarters [HQ]) and crosses the release point (RP), all as specified in the order. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader issues a warning order (WO) to subordinate leaders.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included enough information for subordinate elements to prepare for the mission.</li> <li>b. Gave the WO immediately after being alerted for the mission.</li> <li>c. Included movement instructions if the movement was to be initiated before the operation order (OPORD) was issued.</li> <li>d. Addressed items not covered in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>e. Specified the time and location to issue the OPORD.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader completes the plan and issues the march order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided a statement of the enemy situation, weather, and visibility conditions.</li> <li>b. Identified the route, SP, RP, critical points, and other control points.</li> <li>c. Provided the organization for movement, the order of march, the march rate, and the distance to maintain between units.</li> <li>d. Established security tasks for subordinate elements, to include all-around security and air-guard coverage for the entire element.</li> <li>e. Addressed contingencies for actions on enemy contact.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Plans must include the reaction to an enemy ambush; indirect fire; air attack; nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) attack; and sniper fires.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Provided the soldiers with load guides.</li> <li>g. Ensured that subordinate leaders briefed their plans.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element conducts the necessary resupply of water, rations, ammunition, batteries, and special-issue items.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the personnel and vehicles for the proper load and equipment and their readiness to move.</li> <li>b. Completed a communications check using digital and frequency modulated (FM) radios to report the element's readiness to move.</li> </ul> <p>4. The element conducts the road movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crossed the SP at the designated time.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Maintained personnel and vehicle intervals and the rate of march specified in the order or the unit's SOP. c. Followed the prescribed route.  5. The element maintains local security throughout the movement. a. Maintained all-around observation at all times, to include air guards. b. Oriented as directed, to establish local security.  6. The unit reports and reacts to enemy contact. a. Reported and reacted according to directions in the OPORD using the Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS). b. Reported and reacted according to the unit's SOP using the DRS.  7. The unit halts. a. Conducted the halt at regular intervals according to the unit's SOP (as the tactical situation permitted) to rest the troops, adjust and redistribute the equipment, and perform foot hygiene. b. Positioned the element to provide all-around security. c. Reported all halts to the next higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the Mobile Subscriber Radiotelephone Terminal (MSRT). d. Positioned the vehicles in a herringbone formation. e. Dismounted personnel to provide local security. f. Checked the condition of the personnel and equipment. g. Coordinated with adjacent unit. h. Reported status to higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the MSRT.  8. The leader controls the unit. a. Used visual, messenger, digital, or radio signals for control throughout the movement. b. Reported control measures as directed by the SOP or the order using the DRS. c. Used control measures from the order, modified as needed.  9. The element arrives at the RP at the time specified in the order. a. Met the quartering-party guide, if one was designated. b. Passed through the RP without halting. c. Reported the crossing to higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the MSRT.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-0401.20-0001	Direct Unit Air Defense	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
01-7200.75-0100	Conduct Convoy Operations	STP 21-II-MQS

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-7300.75-0500	Plan Convoy Operations	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
03-4966.90-0010	Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
04-3303.02-0014	Prepare Platoon or Company Combat Orders	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
04-3303.02-0037	Navigate While Mounted	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
04-3303.02-0039	Plan and Execute a Route Fire Support	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
071-329-1000	IDENTIFY TOPOGRAPHIC SYMBOLS ON A MILITARY MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1001	IDENTIFY TERRAIN FEATURES ON A MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1002	DETERMINE THE GRID COORDINATES OF A POINT ON A MILITARY MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1003	DETERMINE A MAGNETIC AZIMUTH USING A LENSATIC COMPASS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1005	DETERMINE A LOCATION ON THE GROUND BY TERRAIN ASSOCIATION	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1008	MEASURE DISTANCE ON A MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1012	ORIENT A MAP TO THE GROUND BY MAP TERRAIN ASSOCIATION	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1018	DETERMINE DIRECTION WITHOUT A COMPASS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0804	PERFORM SURVEILLANCE WITHOUT THE AID OF ELECTRONIC DEVICES	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS	STP 21-1-SMCT
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	STP 21-24-SMCT
301-348-1050	REPORT INFORMATION OF POTENTIAL INTELLIGENCE VALUE	STP 21-1-SMCT
551-721-1359	DRIVE VEHICLE IN A CONVOY	STP 21-1-SMCT
551-721-1363	DRIVE VEHICLE WITH OR WITHOUT TRAILER/SEMITRAILER IN BLACKOUT CONDITIONS	STP 21-1-SMCT
551-721-1408	IMPLEMENT DEFENSIVE PROCEDURES WHEN UNDER ENEMY ATTACK OR AMBUSH IN A TRUCK CONVOY	STP 21-1-SMCT
04-3303.02-0040	Navigate with a Compass and Map	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT A PASSAGE OF LINES (07-3-1125.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is required to conduct a mounted passage of lines. Digital units have functional digital capability and communications. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon moves all personnel and equipment through the stationary unit not later than the time specified in the order. The platoon sustains no casualties from friendly fire or obstacles, and is not surprised by the enemy. Digital units send reports and locations via digital means to enhance the common operational picture (COP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The platoon leader coordinates with the forward unit to prepare for a passage of lines.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided information to the forward-unit commander.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Stated personal and unit identification.</li> <li>(2) Indicated the patrol size.</li> <li>(3) Specified the departure and return times.</li> <li>(4) Identified the patrolled area of operations (AO).</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Received information from the forward unit. The forward-unit leader--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Provided information on the terrain.</li> <li>(2) Identified known or suspected enemy positions.</li> <li>(3) Indicated the likely enemy ambush sites.</li> <li>(4) Detailed the latest enemy activity.</li> <li>(5) Gave detailed information on the friendly positions.</li> <li>(6) Identified the obstacle locations.</li> <li>(7) Delivered the fire plan.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Established departure and reentry security procedures.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Do not use challenges and passwords from the signal operation instructions (SOI) or the signal supplemental instructions (SSI) beyond the forward edge of the battle area (FEBA). The platoon and forward unit develop challenges and passwords to be used forward of the FEBA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Established a signal plan to include call signs, frequencies, code words, pyrotechnics, and challenges and passwords.</li> <li>(2) Identified a guide from the forward unit and coordinated a linkup time.</li> <li>(3) Developed a contingency plan for reentry, if communications with the forward unit could not be established.</li> <li>(4) Coordinated the location of an assembly area (AA), the initial rally point, and the contact and passage points with the forward unit.</li> </ul> <p>2. The platoon conducts a departure of lines. The platoon leader--</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Monitored the forward unit's radio net for changes in the tactical situation. Issued a contingency plan or adjusted the original plan based on the current tactical situation.</p> <p>b. Ensured that the platoon arrived at the contact point at the time specified, displaying the coordinated recognition signal.</p> <p>c. Picked up the guide and followed his instructions for moving the platoon through the designated passage lanes. The platoon did not stop or depart from the passage lanes.</p> <p>d. Ensured that the platoon avoided the forward unit's obstacles.</p> <p>e. Departed from the forward unit's position at the specified time. The platoon employed movement techniques based on the likelihood of enemy contact.</p> <p>3. The platoon conducts a reentry of lines. The platoon leader--</p> <p>a. Stopped the platoon at a reentry rally point just short of the forward unit, out of sight and sound of the observation post (OP).</p> <p>b. Used a prearranged code word to radio the forward unit to advise them that the platoon was ready to reenter.</p> <p>(1) Acknowledged the message before the platoon moved to the contact point. If radio communication was not possible, the platoon leader sent one soldier to contact the OP using the prearranged challenge and password. The OP contacted the unit commander, who sends a guide to lead the platoon through the designated passage lane.</p> <p>(2) Issued a contingency plan, if radio communication was not established and an OP was not found, and moved with a security team to reconnoiter for the previously coordinated contact point.</p> <p>(3) Established contact with the guide from the forward unit using coordinated far- and near-recognition signals.</p> <p>(4) Radioed the platoon or went back and led the platoon to the contact point.</p> <p>c. Displayed the coordinated recognition signal upon arrival at the reentry contact point.</p> <p>d. Picked up the guide and followed his instructions for moving the platoon through designated passage lanes without stopping. The platoon did not depart from the designated passage lanes.</p> <p>e. Ensured that the platoon avoided obstacles emplaced by the forward unit.</p> <p>f. Directed the platoon to an AA, as led by the guide.</p> <p>g. Reported to the command post (CP) and provided the forward unit commander with any tactical information concerning the commander's area of responsibility.</p> <p>h. Linked up with the platoon in the AA and led the platoon back to a secure area for debriefing.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** COUNTER PASSAGE OF LINES (5-OPFOR-0012)

**CONDITION:** Enemy forces are in defensive positions, but they are expected to attempt passage-of-lines operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) received orders to disrupt enemy passage-of-lines operations.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays or prevents enemy passage-of-lines. 1. Delays the passage. 2. Prevents the company from moving all personnel through the stationary unit. 3. Engages the main body of either the moving or the stationary unit.

**TASK:** Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Defend a Battle Position (07-3-4129.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-7) (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7J)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is occupying prepared defensive positions. Intelligence reports indicate that small opposing forces (OPFOR) elements have been sighted in the operational area. Digital units with enhanced capabilities will receive intelligence information and reports via digital means. The OPFOR patrols have increased in sector. The OPFOR attacks the platoon. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The elements in the main defensive positions are not surprised by the OPFOR. The platoon denies enemy penetration of the defensive positions and engages attacking units, forcing enemy withdrawal. Digital units will report and plot friendly and enemy locations and submit reports using digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The observation posts (OPs) detect and correctly identify the enemy.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported enemy activity before the main body was engaged.</li> <li>b. Reported using the size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE) format.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The unit personnel are alerted and occupy fighting positions.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Actuated the alert plan according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>b. Occupied the fighting positions within 1 minute of the initial warning.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The unit reports enemy contact.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported enemy contact using the SALUTE format to the company headquarters (HQ) within 1 minute of contact using the frequency modulated (FM) radio.</li> <li>b. Rendered additional situation reports (SITREPs) as the situation changed.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The OPs return to the unit's position.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used covered and concealed routes back to the defensive position.</li> <li>b. Did not become decisively engaged.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. Indirect fire and or close-air support is requested, if available and applicable.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated the call-for-fire procedure within 1 minute of target acquisition.</li> <li>b. Adjusted the fire within 30 seconds of round impact.</li> </ol> </li> <li>6. The element reacts to the enemy.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Executed the obstacle plan according to the operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO); for example, detonated demolitions, detonated Claymore mines on order, or triggered lines.</li> <li>b. Fired organic weapons as the enemy came into range or as ordered to do so.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Controlled the distribution and the rate of fire to ensure that a continuous volume of effective fire was placed on the enemy.</p> <p>d. Repositioned the vehicles, squads, and individuals to alternate and supplementary positions using covered and concealed routes, as needed.</p> <p>e. Initiated the final protective fires (FPF), if required.</p> <p>f. Directed counterattacks of reserves to eject enemy penetrations, if required.</p> <p>g. Defended the position until the enemy was repelled or when orders to disengage were received from higher HQ.</p> <p>h. Sustained no friendly casualties due to friendly fire.</p> <p>7. The element reacts to the indirect fire.</p> <p>a. Initiated the alert by any member yelling INCOMING. Also alerted the subordinate elements by other available communications means.</p> <p>b. Sought protection under the overhead cover of the fighting positions. If personnel were in the open, they moved to fighting positions or out of the area.</p> <p>c. Moved the vehicles out of the impact area to alternate positions, if applicable.</p> <p>* 8. The leaders reorganize the element.</p> <p>a. Reestablished the chain of command.</p> <p>b. Submitted the SITREP to the company commander.</p> <p>c. Cross-leveled the unit to fill critical positions caused by casualties.</p> <p>d. Redistributed the ammunition.</p> <p>e. Reoccupied the operations, key weapons, and positions immediately.</p> <p>f. Treated and evacuated casualties as necessary. All first aid common tasks were reviewed.</p> <p>g. Submitted casualty reports.</p> <p>h. Updated the personnel roster.</p> <p>i. Processed the enemy prisoners of war (EPW) and captured materials.</p> <p>* 9. The leaders consolidate the element.</p> <p>a. Repositioned the operations.</p> <p>b. Reestablished communication with the elements.</p> <p>c. Repositioned the personnel.</p> <p>d. Reassigned the sectors of fire to cover all gaps.</p> <p>e. Implemented the sleep and alert plan.</p> <p>10. The unit continues the mission.</p> <p>a. Continued on orders from the company commander.</p> <p>b. Continued as soon as the tactical situation permitted.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-217-35-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Move Tactically (07-3-C211.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-7) (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7J)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is required to move cross-country mounted or dismounted. Digital units with enhanced capabilities will utilize their Army Battle Command System (ABCS) to maneuver. The threat may consist of up to a motorized rifle company. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element arrives at its destination without being surprised by the opposing forces (OPFOR). The platoon retains its ability to move. Digital units will leverage their use of the ABCS systems to accomplish this task. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The platoon leader assigns areas of responsibility during the movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned all squads to an area of responsibility.</li> <li>b. Directed squad leaders to assign individual areas of responsibility.</li> <li>c. Ensured that there was all-round coverage of the platoon, including air guard.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The platoon leader designates a route for the movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that there was concealment from ground, air, and space observation.</li> <li>b. Ensured that there was cover from the direct fire of known enemy positions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The squads use a wedge formation during the movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Formed one or two wedges, based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC).</li> <li>b. Closed the wedges during limited visibility so that visibility was maintained between individuals, teams, and squads. The rate of movement was maintained.</li> <li>c. Opened the wedges as obstructions to the movement and to diminish control.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The platoon leader designates the movement technique to be used, based on METT-TC.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated the traveling movement technique when enemy contact was not likely.</li> <li>b. Designated the traveling-overwatch movement technique when enemy contact was possible.</li> <li>c. Designated the bounding-overwatch movement technique when enemy contact was likely.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. The platoon performs the traveling movement technique.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained fire teams about 20 meters apart when dismounted.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Moved the squads on a column axis about 20 meters apart when dismounted.</p> <p>c. Moved in a column formation, staggered laterally, with 50 to 100 meters between vehicles when mounted.</p> <p>d. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.</p> <p>6. The platoon performs the traveling-overwatch movement technique.</p> <p>a. Increased the distance between the lead squad and the platoon's main body by 50 to 100 meters.</p> <p>NOTE: (DISMOUNTED) The lead squad uses traveling overwatch and the trailing squads use traveling.</p> <p>b. Conducted the movement (mounted) with the lead vehicle 100 to 400 meters in front of the rest of the platoon; other vehicles were 50 to 100 meters apart.</p> <p>c. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.</p> <p>7. The platoon performs the bounding-overwatch movement technique.</p> <p>a. Conducted bounds that did not exceed visual overwatch.</p> <p>b. Conducted bounds that stayed within the maximum effective range of overwatching weapons.</p> <p>* 8. The bounding squad moves.</p> <p>a. Signaled to the platoon leader that it was beginning its movement.</p> <p>b. Used a covered and concealed route, when available, for its bound.</p> <p>c. Employed a point man or buddy team as far forward as visual contact with the rest of the squad allowed.</p> <p>d. Moved as quickly as possible while maintaining operation security (OPSEC).</p> <p>e. Moved so as not to mask the fires of the overwatching element.</p> <p>f. Established an overwatch position upon completion of its bound, to overwatch the succeeding bound.</p> <p>g. Informed the platoon leader that it had finished its bound and was ready to overwatch.</p> <p>h. Alerted the platoon leader and overwatching element of any enemy detected, obstacles encountered, or danger areas.</p> <p>9. The overwatch squad provides overwatch.</p> <p>a. Occupied a position that allowed observation and fire to cover the bounding squad's movement to its next overwatch position.</p> <p>b. Oriented the weapons on likely enemy positions.</p> <p>c. Maintained continuous observation of the bounding squad, its route, and any terrain that could influence the route.</p> <p>d. Suppressed enemy units so that the bounding element was not fixed.</p> <p>e. Alerted the bounding squad and the platoon leader of any enemy that it detected.</p> <p>f. Prepared to bound when the bounding team assumed the overwatch position.</p> <p>10. The platoon maintains security during the movement.</p> <p>a. Maintained visual contact at a normal interval of 10 meters (the interval automatically expands and contracts based on terrain and visibility).</p> <p>b. Maintained noise and light discipline.</p> <p>c. Observed sectors of fires so that no enemy could approach the platoon within 35 meters and no aircraft could attack the platoon without warning.</p> <p>*11. The leaders use control measures during the movement.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Positioned themselves where they could control the movement. b. Positioned key weapons. c. Used visual signals and oral commands to control the movement.  12. The platoon leader controls the platoon's movements. a. Assessed the terrain continuously for potential danger areas. b. Used arm and hand signals once contact was made. c. Used visual and audio signals once contact was made.  13. The platoon leader knows the platoon location at all times. a. Expressed the platoon's location as a six-digit coordinate or by using current operational graphics. b. Knew the location of all the platoon elements and the leading, flanking, and trailing company elements, and was accurate to plus or minus 100 meters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Prepare Personnel for Deployment (12-1-0409.05-T01A)  
 (TC 12-16) (AR 220-10) (AR 600-38)  
 (AR 600-8) (AR 600-8-14) (AR 600-8-2)  
 (AR 600-8-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is tasked to deploy to a theater of operations. It is assigned the responsibility to process personnel for overseas movement. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Battalion soldiers are administratively prepared for deployment within the time frame specified in the operation order (OPORD) or letter of instruction (LOI).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) plans preparation for oversea movement (POM).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established processing requirements.</li> <li>b. Established support requirements.</li> <li>c. Published POM plan.</li> <li>d. Briefed command group.</li> <li>e. Coordinated POM with brigade S1.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The S1 or Personnel and Administration Center (PAC) supervisor coordinates POM requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with Assistant Chief of Staff, G1 (Personnel), for personnel service company (PSC) support.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with Staff Judge Advocate (SJA) for legal support.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with medical department activity (MEDDAC) and dental activity (DENTAC) for medical and dental support.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with provost marshal (PM) for privately owned vehicle (POV) storage.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The S1 section participates in the POM process.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted liaison with POM site commander.</li> <li>b. Briefed soldiers on POM procedures.</li> <li>c. Issued POM checklist.</li> <li>d. Reviewed family care plans.</li> <li>e. Reviewed pay elections.</li> <li>f. Assisted soldiers in completing postal forms.</li> <li>g. Reviewed POM checklist for completeness.</li> <li>h. Identified nonparticipants and nondeployable soldiers.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The S1 or PAC supervisor conducts briefings for family members.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated installation support.</li> <li>b. Established briefing site and schedules.</li> <li>c. Published family-support packet.</li> <li>d. Monitored family-support briefings.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>		<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Conduct a Radiological or Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-19)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is conducting operations in an area where nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) weapons have been initiated. The commander needs to determine the presence of, or information on, radiological, chemical, or biological hazards in the area of operational concern. Digital units have performed functionality checks and all digital systems are functioning. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The commander and operations section plan a reconnaissance or survey mission for the company's organic reconnaissance element. The plan is issued with the two-thirds planning time remaining for the element. The plan must be detailed and feasible for the element to perform. If the situation and location permit, the commander supervises the preparation and execution. Digital units can send and receive reports, overlay graphics and text messaging information through digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander receives and analyses the mission and identifies all unit tasks.</li> <li>* 2. The commander issues a warning order as soon as possible to subordinate leaders.</li> <li>* 3. The commander and the operations section makes a tentative plan based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Planned reconnaissance or survey techniques, locations, turn-back dose rates (radiological missions), decontamination after the reconnaissance/survey, fire support, reporting procedures, logistical support, and leader and signal information.</li> <li>b. Coordinated for intelligence information, air or indirect fire support, and medical support and coordinated its plan with units in the area of operations if necessary.</li> <li>c. Drew, stocked, or coordinated petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); ammunition; MOPP gear; Classes II and VII support; and maintenance/recovery/Class IX support for the platoon.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The commander orders units to start movement if necessary.</li> <li>* 5. The commander reconnoiters the operations area and makes a map reconnaissance as a minimum.</li> <li>* 6. The commander completes the plan and issues the operation order (OPORD) with two-thirds of the total planning time remaining for the platoon.</li> <li>* 7. The commander supervises preparations of the reconnaissance/survey if the location of operations permits. Communications, supply, and maintenance sections assist the platoons with priority maintenance and resupply support.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>8. The company conducts a tactical road march or executes traveling movement to the reconnaissance/survey site. The reconnaissance or survey element--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Executed a mounted movement technique (traveling, traveling overwatch, or bounding overwatch) or reconnoitered dismounted, as the situation and or mission requires.</li> <li>b. Detected and marked the contaminated area, ensuring that the marking signs were facing toward friendly areas. Detected uncontaminated areas and routes. Selected decontamination sites with a water source, cover and concealment, and physical capacity to hold a site if required to perform reconnaissance for decontamination sites as a mission.</li> <li>c. Determined the limits of the contaminated area. Detected the types of chemical agents or specific levels and types of radiological contamination as required by the mission.</li> </ul> <p>9. The headquarters, if prescribed by the mission, assists the reconnaissance/survey units' recovery operations.</p> <p>*10. The commander or operations officer, if prescribed by the mission, debriefs returning reconnaissance/survey units and forwards acquired information to higher headquarters in NBC 4 or NBC 5 format if required.</p> <p>11. The radiological company leaders record, collate, and submit individual and unit radiation-exposure-status (RES) readings to higher headquarters.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Conduct a Thorough Decontamination Operation (03-2-C312.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-5) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)  
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A unit is contaminated with a persistent chemical agent during combat operations. Time is available to conduct reconstitution, to include a thorough decontamination. A supporting smoke/decontamination (or decontamination) platoon is tasked to conduct the thorough decontamination mission. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The smoke/decontamination platoon sets up the detailed equipment decontamination site and removes all contamination from the equipment and vehicles. The contaminated unit sets up the detailed troop decontamination (with technical advice from the decontamination platoon) and processes all personnel. The responsible units properly close the site and report the location to higher headquarters (HQ).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The contaminated unit's leader determines the extent of the contamination and establishes decontamination priorities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received input from subordinate leaders and/or staff.</li> <li>b. Established priorities of decontamination.</li> </ul> 2. The contaminated unit submits a request for decontamination to higher HQ. The request should, as a minimum, include the-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designation of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>b. Location of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>c. Frequency and call sign of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>d. Time the unit became contaminated.</li> <li>e. Number of vehicles and equipment, by type, that were contaminated.</li> <li>f. Type of contamination.</li> <li>g. Earliest possible time the unit could move or begin decontamination.</li> <li>h. Special requirements (patient decontamination station, recovery assets, unit decontamination team, and so forth).</li> </ul> 3. The contaminated unit's higher HQ chemical staff-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued a warning order to the supporting chemical unit.</li> <li>b. Coordinated the movement of the contaminated unit to the linkup point and the decontamination site.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with supporting elements (medical, engineer, air defense, military police, smoke support, and so forth).</li> </ul> NOTE: The contaminated unit is responsible for providing security for the decontamination site. Security support must be coordinated before arriving at the linkup point.                     4. The contaminated unit, decontamination platoon, and other supporting elements arrive at the linkup point.                     5. The decontamination unit's leader briefs the site layout and the procedures.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>6. The contaminated unit conducts predecontamination site or staging-area activities.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Segregated the contaminated vehicles and equipment from the uncontaminated ones, if possible.</li> <li>b. Dismounted the vehicles (except the drivers), ensuring that they-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Removed all equipment from the tops of the vehicles.</li> <li>(2) Did not reenter the vehicles once they were exited (to prevent further contamination of the interior of the vehicles).</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Prepared vehicles for detailed equipment decontamination. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Used pioneer tools to remove all heavy mud and debris from the vehicle.</li> <li>(2) Removed and disposed of seat covers, canvas items, camouflage netting, and other materials which could absorb chemical contaminants.</li> <li>(3) Removed and disposed of nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) covers as contaminated waste.</li> </ol> </li> <li>d. Moved contaminated personnel and vehicles and equipment to the detailed troop and equipment decontamination lines.</li> </ol> <p>7. The designated personnel set up and maintain communications within the decontamination site and coordinate with the supported unit for additional communications support.</p> <p>* 8. The decontamination unit sets up detailed equipment decontamination-site stations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Station 1. Initial wash.</li> <li>b. Station 2. Decontamination solution #2 (DS2) application.</li> <li>c. Station 3. Wait/interior decontamination.</li> <li>d. Station 4. Rinse.</li> <li>e. Station 5. Check.</li> </ol> <p>9. The contaminated unit sets up detailed troop decontamination site stations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Station 1. Individual gear decontamination.</li> <li>b. Station 2. Overboot and hood decontamination.</li> <li>c. Station 3. Overgarment removal.</li> <li>d. Station 4. Overboot and glove removal.</li> <li>e. Station 5. Monitor.</li> <li>f. Station 6. Mask removal.</li> <li>g. Station 7. Mask decontamination point.</li> <li>h. Station 8. Reissue point.</li> </ol> <p>NOTE: The decontamination unit's leader must establish a route to move vehicle operators from Station 3 of the detailed equipment decontamination site to the detailed troop decontamination site.</p> <p>10. The decontamination unit's leader (in conjunction with the leader or control cell from the contaminated unit) supervises an overall thorough decontamination-site operation.</p> <p>11. The decontamination unit processes vehicles and equipment through the detailed equipment decontamination stations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the contaminated unit provided guides to control vehicle traffic through the site.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the drivers moved the vehicles and equipment through the stations.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Ensured that the assistant drivers who had processed through the detailed troop decontamination stations replaced the primary drivers at Station 3, once interior decontamination was completed.</p> <p>d. Ensured that the primary drivers proceeded to the detailed troop decontamination site to process through the stations.</p> <p>e. Ensured that the soldiers from the detailed troop decontamination site and the vehicles and equipment from the detailed equipment decontamination site reunited and moved to the reconstitution area.</p> <p>12. The contaminated unit processes personnel through the detailed troop decontamination stations.</p> <p>13. The decontamination unit's soldiers close the detailed equipment decontamination site.</p> <p>a. Station 1.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Decontaminated all equipment used at the station (power-driven decontamination equipment [PDDE], hoses, nozzles, and so forth).</li> <li>(2) Checked all equipment for contamination and decontaminated again, if necessary.</li> <li>(3) Drained water from the blivets or fabric tanks.</li> <li>(4) Loaded equipment on the vehicles.</li> <li>(5) Spread a can of super tropical bleach (STB) in each sump and covered the sumps.</li> <li>(6) Marked the sumps.</li> </ol> <p>b. Station 2 (for chemical/biological only).</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Applied DS2 to PDDE, mops, handles, decontamination apparatus, and containers.</li> <li>(2) Discarded mop heads, brushes, and the station sign in the Station 4 sump and then pulled the PDDE forward and washed the entire application point.</li> <li>(3) Loaded unused decontaminants on the vehicles.</li> <li>(4) Marked the area and moved all reusable equipment from Station 2 to Station 3.</li> </ol> <p>c. Station 3.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Inspected unused supplies for contamination; if uncontaminated, loaded on the vehicles.</li> <li>(2) Threw contaminated supplies in the Station 4 sump.</li> </ol> <p>d. Station 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Decontaminated all equipment used at the station (PDDE, hoses, nozzles, and so forth).</li> <li>(2) Checked all equipment for contamination and decontaminated again, if necessary.</li> <li>(3) Drained the water from the blivets or fabric tanks.</li> <li>(4) Loaded equipment on the vehicles.</li> <li>(5) Spread a can of STB in each sump and covered the sumps (after the residue from Station 5 was placed in the sump).</li> <li>(6) Marked the sumps.</li> </ol> <p>e. Station 5.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Decontaminated all equipment used at the station.</li> <li>(2) Loaded all the reusable equipment on the vehicles.</li> <li>(3) Discarded unusable items in the Station 4 sump.</li> </ol> <p>14. The decontamination unit moves to the troop decontamination site for decontamination.</p> <p>15. The station operators clean up the detailed troop decontamination site.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Placed all the used supplies from Station 7 in the Station 7 sump. b. Moved all usable equipment and supplies from all stations to Station 1. c. Discarded unusable supplies from Stations 5, 4, and 3 in the sump at Station 1. d. Decontaminated all supplies and equipment collected at Station 1. e. Emptied and rinsed the decontaminant containers from Station 1 in the sump at that station. f. Marked the area. g. Removed overgarments utilizing the MOPP-gear-exchange technique. h. Disposed of used overgarments in the Station 1 sump. i. Moved all the equipment used to fill the sump upwind of the decontamination area. j. Decontaminated rubber gloves and moved all equipment from Station 1 upwind of the decontamination area. Kept this equipment separate from the equipment used to fill the sump. k. Spread a can of STB in each sump and covered the sumps. l. Marked the sumps. m. Submitted an NBC 4 report to higher HQ defining the areas of contamination resulting from the decontamination operation.  *16. The contaminated unit conducts reconstitution activities. a. Coordinated with supported battalions for assessment and recovery teams. b. Coordinated and requested maintenance support. c. Coordinated and requested medical support. d. Coordinated and established logistical support for resupply activities.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1014	IDENTIFY CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M8 DETECTOR PAPER	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-2001	USE M256 OR M256A1 CHEMICAL AGENT DETECTOR KIT	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-3010	SUPERVISE EMPLOYMENT OF NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, OR CHEMICAL MARKERS	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201.05-T01A)

(FM 3-100)  
 (FM 3-4)

(FM 3-11)

(FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Higher headquarters (HQ) informs the unit that opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) warfare in the area. NBC equipment has been issued. Soldiers carry protective masks with their load-carrying equipment (LCE), having mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) gear readily available (within the work area). Digital units confirmed that the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) and supporting systems are operational and loaded. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit uses collective protection or takes measures to limit the effects of NBC attacks and/or contamination and continues the mission. Digital units monitor Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) systems for situational awareness (SA) reports. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The unit leader checks accountability and serviceability of NBC-defense equipment.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that NBC-detection equipment was issued to trained operators.</li> <li>b. Ensured that NBC-detection equipment was employed and operating within 15 minutes.</li> <li>c. Identified equipment shortages.</li> <li>d. Took action to obtain replacement equipment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The unit assumes MOPP levels as directed by higher headquarters or as the NBC situation dictates and is prepared to operate at the time specified in the operation order (OPORD).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that soldiers could mask and hood within 15 seconds.</li> <li>b. Ensured that soldiers could assume MOPP 4 within 8 minutes.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The unit's soldiers take actions to protect themselves against NBC attack.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Set up and use collective protective shelters (if available).</li> <li>b. Prepared protective shelters, such as foxholes with overhead cover.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The unit leader adjusts the MOPP level using MOPP analysis.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received and analyzed the enemy NBC threat capability. Took the following into consideration:                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Was the unit targeted or could it be targeted?</li> <li>(2) Did the enemy have the capability to deliver chemical or nuclear weapons?</li> <li>(3) When or where could the enemy most likely deliver the chemical or nuclear weapons?</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Collected and analyzed weather data. Took the following into consideration:                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Was it day or night?</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) What were the current weather conditions (see chemical downwind message [CDM] or weather report)? (3) What were the weather conditions two, four, and six hours in the future (see CDM or weather report)? c. Analyzed the unit's status and mission. Took the following into consideration: (1) What was the mission? (2) What was the work rate? (3) How long did the work take? (4) What were the training and physical levels of the unit? (5) How long did it take to warn all the soldiers of an NBC attack?		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11) (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting chemical warfare, or intelligence indicates its use is imminent. Higher headquarters (HQ) directs implementation of actions to minimize casualties and limit contamination. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Unit personnel assume mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 within 8 minutes, and complete preparation efforts before the attack or its effects reaching their location. The unit protects its personnel, equipment, food, and water and continues its mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order.  2. Unit personnel start defensive preparations for a chemical attack. a. Assumed MOPP 4 within 8 minutes after notification. b. Attached M9 detector paper to their right arms and left wrists and to either their right or left ankles and to the vehicles. c. Conducted MOPP field-sanitation procedures. d. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms upwind of position.  3. Unit personnel prepare fighting positions or shelters. a. Used existing, natural, or man-made facilities (such as caves, ditches, culverts, and tunnels) as fighting positions and shelters. b. Dug fighting positions and bunkers with overhead cover. NOTE: Fighting positions should have overhead cover consisting of at least a minimum of 18 inches of soil, if time permits.  * 4. The noncommissioned officers (NCOs) check personnel and fighting positions. a. Ensured that personnel were at MOPP 4. b. Ensured that individual and platoon fighting positions were hardened with sandbags and overhead cover.  * 5. The unit leader takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation by increasing, decreasing, or modifying the MOPP level as appropriate.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)  
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-5)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is deployed in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 2. Intelligence indicates that opposing forces (OPFOR) have initiated chemical warfare. The automatic alarm sounds or the detector paper changes color, causing the unit to react. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The soldiers sound the alarm (vocal or nonvocal), immediately assumes MOPP 4, and utilizes available shelter to prevent further exposure to contamination. The unit reacts to the chemical alarm within 9 seconds.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Unit leaders ensure that soldiers react to the sound of the chemical-agent alarm or recognize the indicators for a chemical/biological attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Put on their protective masks within 9 seconds.</li> <li>b. Gave the alarm (vocal or nonvocal).</li> <li>c. Assumed MOPP 4 as soon as possible.</li> <li>d. Sought additional shelter, if available.</li> <li>e. Administered a nerve-agent antidote (buddy aid) to other soldiers with symptoms of nerve-agent poisoning (if applicable).</li> <li>f. Administered nerve-agent antidotes to selves (if applicable).</li> <li>g. Checked soldiers to ensure that protective measures were followed.</li> </ul> <p>2. The soldiers take additional protective measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Protected exposed equipment and supplies.</li> <li>b. Monitored the area by testing with detector kits.</li> <li>c. Used prevention procedures, such as marking contaminated areas.</li> </ul> <p>3. The soldiers conduct immediate decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted skin decontamination.</li> <li>b. Conducted wipe down of personal equipment with M291 or M280 decontamination kits.</li> <li>c. Conducted operator spray-down of equipment.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The leaders initiate unmasking procedures and report to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that casualties were provided with medical care.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties.</li> <li>c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher HQ immediately.</li> <li>d. Continued the mission or requested movement to an alternate location.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
081-831-1000	EVALUATE A CASUALTY	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1030	ADMINISTER NERVE AGENT ANTIDOTE TO SELF (SELF-AID)	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1031	ADMINISTER FIRST AID TO A NERVE AGENT CASUALTY (BUDDY-AID)	STP 21-1-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives a strike-warning message from higher headquarters (HQ) directing specific actions to be implemented. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit completes preparations within 30 minutes of a friendly nuclear-strike warning. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The designated radio operator acknowledges the strike warning message. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Authenticated the call.</li> <li>b. Acknowledged the warning by return message.</li> </ul> * 2. The unit leader issues a warning order. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Warned subordinate and affected units.</li> <li>b. Ensured that subordinates executed the actions as directed.</li> </ul> 3. Unit soldiers complete actions before detonation occurs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed vehicles and equipment for best terrain shielding.</li> <li>b. Disconnected nonessential electronic equipment.</li> <li>c. Tied down essential antennas.</li> <li>d. Took down nonessential antennas and antenna leads.</li> <li>e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects.</li> </ul> NOTE: Add sandbags to shelters, foxholes, or tents in the direction of the strike. Cover openings or position them away from the strike. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Zeroed dosimeters.</li> <li>g. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives notice that a nuclear attack is probable and must initiate actions to minimize casualties and damage. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit hardens and shields positions and equipment and conducts periodic monitoring. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit's leader issues a warning order to subordinate units, ensuring that all soldiers understand the order.  2. The unit begins defensive preparation for a nuclear attack. a. Placed vehicles and equipment for best terrain shielding (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions). b. Turned off and disconnected nonessential electronic equipment according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). c. Tied down essential antennas. d. Took down nonessential antenna leads according to the unit's SOP or other guidance. e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects. f. Zeroed dosimeters. g. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects. h. Took cover in hardened shelters (if available). i. Used field-expedient shelters.  3. The unit takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation. a. Continued periodic monitoring. b. Reported all dose-rate and dosimeter readings to higher headquarters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)  
 (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives orders to cross a radiologically contaminated area. The approximate boundaries of the area are known or marked. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the contaminated area by the shortest, fastest route available without incurring radiation casualties or spreading contamination. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leaders prepare for the crossing. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed individuals who may be exposed to radioactive dust particles to cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, roll their sleeves down, and wear gloves.</li> <li>b. Received operational-exposure guidance (OEG) from the commander (turn back the dose/turn back the dose rate).</li> <li>c. Ensured that radiac-equipment operators checked the instruments.</li> </ul> 2. The unit prepares for the crossing. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified extra shielding requirements (for example, use sandbags on the vehicle's floor).</li> <li>b. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material.</li> <li>c. Started continuous monitoring.</li> </ul> 3. The unit crosses the area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Avoided stirring up dust.</li> <li>b. Kept out of the dust cloud by increasing the intervals and distances between the vehicles.</li> <li>c. Conducted movement as rapidly as possible (tracked vehicles should be buttoned up).</li> </ul> 4. The unit performs immediate decontamination of personnel and equipment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for casualties.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties (if applicable).</li> <li>c. Conducted necessary decontamination.</li> <li>d. Evacuated casualties.</li> <li>e. Continued the mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-4003	CONTROL UNIT RADIATION EXPOSURE	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-50)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit encounters smoke, friendly or enemy, while conducting operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit exploits the threat smoke or employs friendly smoke to conceal its own activities and continues the mission. The time required to prepare is increased when conducting this task in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The unit does not allow smoke to impede the performance of the mission.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed its mission in the presence of smoke.</li> <li>b. Used threat smoke to conceal its own movements.</li> <li>c. Moved to alternate positions to reduce the effects of the threat's use of smoke.</li> <li>d. Considered using countersmoke to conceal their own activities.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The unit employs organic smoke-grenade launchers, smoke pots, and smoke hand grenades.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated smoke operations with the unit commander or the supported unit.</li> <li>b. Determined the wind direction and speed.</li> <li>c. Determined where to release smoke and where it would travel.</li> <li>d. Determined the duration of the smoke operations.</li> <li>e. Determined the effects of weather conditions on the smoke plan.</li> <li>f. Ensured that the smoke covered a larger area than the unit's position.</li> <li>g. Requested smoke support from other units (if organic systems would not accomplish the task).</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The unit uses target acquisition and guidance systems.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined what available target acquisition systems were effective in the smoke and used them.</li> <li>b. Requested target acquisition and guidance systems that were effective in the smoke.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) requests resupply of smoke munitions when required.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested smoke grenades and smoke pots.</li> <li>b. Distributed smoke grenades and smoke pots.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)  
 (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is located within a predicted fallout area. The mission does not allow movement from the predicted fallout area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to residual radiation. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders prepare the unit for fallout. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that individuals covered their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, rolled their sleeves down, and wore gloves.</li> <li>b. Covered equipment; munitions; petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL); food; and water containers or placed them inside shelters or vehicles.</li> <li>c. Used shelters, closed vehicles, or available shielding to protect personnel from fallout.</li> <li>d. Ensured that continuous monitoring was maintained using available nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) detection and identification equipment.</li> </ul> 2. The designated personnel monitor fallout. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained total-dose information using available total-dose instruments.</li> <li>b. Ensured that exposure was minimized while the commander determined if relocation to a clean area was necessary or possible.</li> <li>c. Calculated the optimum time of exit.</li> <li>d. Sent NBC 4 reports to higher headquarters (HQ) using secure means when possible.</li> </ul> * 3. The unit leader develops a contingency plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used guidance from higher HQ based on the mission and previous radiation exposure.</li> <li>b. Planned for rotation of individuals to minimize exposure.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-4003	CONTROL UNIT RADIATION EXPOSURE	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)  
 (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Soldiers observe a brilliant flash of light and/or a mushroom-shaped cloud. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit takes action to minimize exposure to the initial effects of a nuclear detonation in its area and continues its mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The soldiers take immediate protective actions in response to a nuclear attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Without warning--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Closed eyes immediately.</li> <li>(2) Dropped to the ground in a prone position, with head toward blast, if possible (if in the hatch of an armored vehicle, immediately dropped down inside the vehicle).</li> <li>(3) Kept head and face down and helmet on.</li> <li>(4) Remained prone until the blast wave passed and all debris stopped falling.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. With warning--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified the best available shelter (fighting positions or inside shelters).</li> <li>(2) Moved to the shelter.</li> <li>(3) Took actions to protect themselves from the blast and radiation.</li> <li>(4) Kept clothing loosely fitted with headgear on at all times.</li> <li>(5) Protected eyes and minimized exposed skin areas.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 2. The leaders reorganize the unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reestablished the chain of command.</li> <li>b. Reestablished communications.</li> <li>c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) 1 report to the higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>d. Treated casualties.</li> <li>e. Reported casualties.</li> <li>f. Evacuated casualties.</li> <li>g. Evaluated facilities for protection from residual radiation.</li> <li>h. Implemented continuous monitoring.</li> <li>i. Submitted a damage assessment to higher HQ.</li> <li>j. Initiated an area-damage-control plan as required.</li> <li>k. Extinguished all fires before they spread out of control.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The leaders ensure that weapon systems are operational.</p> <p>4. The soldiers right overturned vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for loss of coolant, fuel, and battery fluids.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Performed operator's maintenance to restore moderately damaged vehicles to combat use.  5. The soldiers improve cover (if applicable). a. Chose dense covering material. b. Covered in depth. c. Provided strong support. d. Covered as much of the opening as practical.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1018	REACT TO A NUCLEAR HAZARD	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-3005	PREPARE AND SUBMIT NBC 1 REPORTS	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-4003	CONTROL UNIT RADIATION EXPOSURE	STP 21-24-SMCT
081-831-1005	PREVENT SHOCK	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1007	GIVE FIRST AID FOR BURNS	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1016	PUT ON A FIELD OR PRESSURE DRESSING	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1017	PUT ON A TOURNIQUET	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1025	APPLY A DRESSING TO AN OPEN ABDOMINAL WOUND	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1033	APPLY A DRESSING TO AN OPEN HEAD WOUND	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1034	SPLINT A SUSPECTED FRACTURE	STP 21-1-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-5) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is operating in a contaminated environment and/or is contaminated. Performance degradation from mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 is increasing, and protective gear is in danger of penetration by contamination. Time and the tactical situation permit the unit to conduct operational decontamination. Replacement protective gear is available for each soldier. For a nonsupported decontamination, unit decontamination equipment and supplies are available and operational. For a supported decontamination, a decontamination unit is available, operational, and tasked to provide decontamination support. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit decontaminates its individual gear and conducts MOPP-gear exchange (utilizing the buddy system) without sustaining additional casualties from nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) contamination. The unit limits the contamination transfer hazard by removing gross chemical contamination on equipment and minimizes contamination on soldiers according to Field Manual (FM) 3-5. The unit reduces radiological contamination to negligible risk levels according to FM 3-5 and reduces chemical and biological contamination to accelerate the weathering process and eventually provide temporary relief from MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The contaminated unit's leader determines the extent of contamination and establishes decontamination priorities.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received input from staff or subordinate leaders.</li> <li>b. Established priorities of decontamination.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The contaminated unit submits a request for decontamination to higher headquarters (HQ). The request should, as a minimum, include the--                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designation of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>b. Location of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>c. Frequency and call sign of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>d. Time the unit became contaminated.</li> <li>e. Number of vehicles and equipment, by type, that are contaminated.</li> <li>f. Type of contamination.</li> <li>g. Special requirements (patient decontamination station, recovery assets, unit decontamination team, and so forth).</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The contaminated unit coordinates with higher HQ.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained permission to conduct decontamination and obtain necessary support.</li> <li>b. Selected a linkup point to meet supporting units (company supply section, company/battalion power-driven decontamination equipment [PDDE] crew, decontamination squad/platoon, and so forth).</li> <li>c. Coordinated with supporting elements.</li> <li>d. Requested replacement MOPP gear.</li> <li>e. Coordinated with supporting units to determine if they would also conduct a MOPP-gear exchange.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The contaminated unit's leader and NBC specialist select a site to conduct the operation, ensuring that the site selected provides the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Adequate overhead concealment.</li> <li>b. Good drainage.</li> <li>c. Easy access and exit (but off the main routes).</li> <li>d. Proximity to a water source large enough to support the vehicle washdown.</li> <li>e. Area large enough to accommodate units involved in the operational decontamination (100 square meters for both vehicle-washdown and MOPP-gear-exchange sites).</li> </ol> <p>5. The contaminated unit coordinates for operational decontamination support (company/battalion PDDE crew or decontamination unit).</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested operational decontamination support.</li> <li>b. Notified higher HQ of the area for the operational decontamination.</li> <li>c. Established communications with the decontamination unit.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the decontamination unit knew the locations of the linkup and selected decontamination sites.</li> </ol> <p>6. The contaminated unit and supporting units move to the decontamination site.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Met at the linkup point as coordinated.</li> <li>b. Provided security at both the linkup point and the decontamination site.</li> </ol> <p>7. The units prepare for operational decontamination.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Set up the decontamination site. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The supporting decontamination unit crew set up the vehicle-washdown site.</li> <li>(2) The contaminated unit set up the MOPP-gear-exchange site not less than 50 meters upwind of the vehicle-washdown site.</li> <li>(3) The remainder of the unit prepared its equipment for decontamination.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Conducted preparatory actions in the predecontamination area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Vehicle crews (except for the operators) dismounted unless they had an operational overpressure system and an uncontaminated interior.</li> <li>(2) Dismounted crews removed mud and camouflage from the vehicles. The contaminated unit provided personnel to do this if the crews did not dismount.</li> <li>(3) Separated vehicles and dismounted crews. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Ensured that vehicle operators were briefed (included the use of overhead cover and concealment and the proper interval).</li> <li>(b) Ensured that vehicles were buttoned up (all doors, hatches, and other openings were closed or covered).</li> </ol> </li> <li>(4) Moved vehicles, with operators, to the vehicle-washdown site.</li> <li>(5) Moved dismounted crews and all other soldiers in the contaminated unit to the MOPP-gear-exchange site.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>8. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) of the decontamination unit supervises the operation of the vehicle-washdown site, ensuring that the--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Vehicle operators maintained the proper interval between vehicles while processing through the washdown station.</li> <li>b. Vehicles were washed properly. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Started at the top and worked down.</li> <li>(2) Sprayed hot, soapy water for 2 to 3 minutes per vehicle.</li> <li>(3) Monitored water consumption.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Vehicles moved to the assembly area after vehicle washdown.</li> <li>d. Vehicle operators moved to the MOPP-gear-exchange site and conducted MOPP-gear exchange.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>9. The contaminated unit conducts MOPP-gear exchange.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the equipment decontamination station (with super tropical bleach [STB] dry mix).</li> <li>b. Briefed the MOPP-gear-exchange participants on the procedures to be followed.</li> <li>c. Placed decontaminated individual equipment on a clean surface (plastics, poncho, or other similar material).</li> <li>d. Exchanged the MOPP gear using the buddy system.</li> <li>e. Moved soldiers to the assembly area after completing the MOPP-gear exchange.</li> </ul> <p>NOTES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ensured that the supporting units had the opportunity to use the MOPP-gear-exchange site before proceeding.</li> <li>2. The supporting decontamination unit cleaned and marked the site and reported the area of contamination (using NBC 4 report) to higher HQ.</li> </ul> <p>10. Unit leaders account for all personnel and equipment after completion of the operational decontamination.</p> <p>11. The contaminated unit's leader reports to higher HQ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the completion and location of the decontamination site (vehicle-washdown and the MOPP-gear-exchange sites).</li> <li>b. Requested permission to perform unmasking procedures if, through testing, no hazard was detected.</li> <li>c. Determined the adequacy of decontamination and adjusted the MOPP level as required (after obtaining approval from higher HQ).</li> </ul> <p>12. The contaminated unit continues the mission.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1023	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WHEN CHANGING MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is en route to a new location on a designated route. The unit cannot move off that route and still complete its assigned mission. The unit discovers contamination on the route and is directed to cross the contaminated area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the contaminated area without suffering chemical-agent casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader selects a route across the contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used a nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) 5 (Chemical) report and/or reconnaissance reports to select a route.</li> <li>b. Selected a route that minimized exposure consistent with the mission.</li> <li>c. Obtained a route clearance and approval.</li> </ul> <p>2. The unit prepares to cross the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 for crossing the area.</li> <li>b. Ensured that all drivers, vehicle commanders, and leaders knew the route of march or had strip maps.</li> <li>c. Ensured that vehicles were buttoned up (mounted movement).</li> <li>d. Placed externally-stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material.</li> <li>e. Attached M9 detector paper to the soldiers and the vehicles to provide warning of contamination.</li> </ul> <p>3. The unit crosses the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Avoided low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation.</li> <li>b. Conducted dismounted movement, if necessary, as rapidly as possible.</li> <li>c. Crossed the area as quickly and as carefully as possible.</li> </ul> <p>4. The unit exits the contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for casualties.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties (if applicable).</li> <li>c. Conducted necessary decontamination.</li> <li>d. Continued the mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1014	IDENTIFY CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M8 DETECTOR PAPER	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-2004	PREPARE AND SUBMIT NBC 4 REPORTS	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-3004	SUPERVISE THE CROSSING OF A CONTAMINATED AREA	STP 21-24-SMCT
04-3303.01-0034	Navigate Using a Map and Compass	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
04-3306.01-0003	Move Over, Through, or Around Obstacles (Except Minefields)	STP 21-II-MQS
071-329-1005	DETERMINE A LOCATION ON THE GROUND BY TERRAIN ASSOCIATION	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-1-SMCT
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** PREPARE AN OBSTACLE PLAN (05-2-0001)  
 (FM 90-7) (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-100)  
 (FM 5-102) (FM 5-71-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is supporting a task force (TF), and guidance has been received from the TF commander. The commander has completed an engineer estimate and has developed the initial engineer plan to support the operation. The TF commander's guidance identifies directed obstacles, responsibilities, obstacle belts, obstacle-restricted areas, scatterable-mine (SCATMINE) employment authority, and concept, priorities, and special instructions. Digital units have performed all functions checks of digital systems and are receiving information updating the situational awareness a(SA) and common operational picture (COP). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The obstacle plan supports the TF commander's scheme of maneuver. It graphically shows the TF commander's intent for obstacle groups in the TF sector. The overlay must be completed and submitted to the TF by the most expedient means available, no later than the time specified in the fragmentary order (FRAGO) or the operation order (OPORD). Digital units update the digital database to enhance sending / receiving reports to update the common operational picture (COP) and situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element leader obtains and considers available information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received the constraints and restraints from higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>b. Determined the TF's course of action (COA).</li> <li>c. Developed the initial analysis as part of the engineer-estimate process.</li> <li>d. Determined the specified tasks from higher unit's OPORD.</li> </ul> * 2. The company commander, assisted by the HQ staff, develops an initial plan using the Maneuver Control System (MCS) and the Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included the obstacles directed by higher HQ.</li> <li>b. Included the obstacles directed by the TF commander.</li> <li>c. Included the obstacle groups that achieved the desired effect on the enemy.</li> <li>d. Included the obstacle-restricted areas.</li> <li>e. Included the SCATMINE employment concept (identified by the type of SCATMINE system).</li> <li>f. Integrated the Hornet and the Raptor into the defensive plan, which is used to deny the enemy use of an area, for overwatching conventional minefields, on high-speed avenues of approach, and in other ways as needed.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>g. Included the priority of the distribution of assets: Class IV; Class V (engineer); other obstacle assets under brigade or engineer company control, to include units from higher echelons; and the SCATMINE allocation by sortie for the Gator and the Air Volcano, the number of rounds for area-denial artillery munitions/remote antiarmor mine system (ADAM/RAAMS), the number of mines/reloads for the Flipper and Volcano, and the number of dispensers for Modular Pack Mine System (MOPMS).</p> <p>h. Included the execution authority and special instructions for reserved demolitions and/or obstacles.</p> <p>i. Included the lanes and routes key to the brigade's maneuver element or logistics plan and instructions for their closure.</p> <p>NOTE: The initial plan contains tentative information. While directive in nature, the specifics of the plan are modified based on the tactical plans of the subordinate maneuver elements.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader integrates the initial obstacle plan into the tactical plan.</p> <p>a. Directed only those items key to the maneuver plan.</p> <p>b. Allowed maximum flexibility for subordinate maneuver commanders to determine the type and location of obstacles, consistent with the TF commander's scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>c. Provided the plan to the maneuver commander and ensured that it was incorporated into the engineer annex.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader consolidates subordinate-unit obstacle plans into the final (actual) obstacle plan. The leader ensured that the obstacle types and locations were coordinated with the maneuver and fire-support (FS) plans.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader ensures that the final obstacle plan is complete.</p> <p>a. Contained the location, type, and special characteristics of each obstacle (including directed obstacles) and all scatterable minefields with self-destruct times, except for the MOPMS minefields.</p> <p>b. Contained a timetable and estimated completion time for obstacles not yet completed.</p> <p>c. Included specific orders stating under what conditions and by whose authority reserve obstacles were to be executed.</p> <p>d. Illustrated the exact location of opened routes and lanes according to the tactical and logistical plan, including those specified by higher HQ.</p> <p>e. Included the changes in obstacle groups and other such adjustments that had been coordinated with subordinate elements.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-217-35-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT MINEFIELD-CLEARING OPERATIONS (05-2-0111)  
 (FM 20-32) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer company is directed to clear a minefield. The area is secure and enemy fire is unlikely. The company's assigned equipment is in serviceable condition and has sufficient demolitions to accomplish the mission. Digital systems are functional and providing current situational awareness (SA) data. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company removes or destroys all mines. The company sustains no friendly casualties to mines. Digital units send reports via digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander verifies critical data from the Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355, if available.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified the minefield location.</li> <li>b. Confirmed the number and the type of mines (antitank [AT] or antipersonnel [AP]).</li> <li>c. Verified the minefield boundaries.</li> <li>d. Verified the number of rows and the location of landmarks.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The company commander organizes the company for clearance operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established a marking party for minefield boundaries, if not previously marked.</li> <li>b. Designated personnel to operate control points at the rear of the minefield.</li> <li>c. Designated personnel to operate a mine dump, if friendly mines were to be recovered.</li> <li>d. Established mine-sweep teams.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The company commander directs the locating and marking of all mines and lanes.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned starting points and areas to clear to a minimum width of 25 meters and the full depth of the minefield.</li> <li>b. Ensured that mines were marked as soon as identified.</li> <li>c. Ensured that mine detector operators were at least 8 meters apart at all times, swept a 2-meter path, and were relieved every 20 minutes.</li> <li>d. Deployed the teams in echelon formation.</li> <li>e. Ensured the lanes were marked as the sweep teams proceeded down them.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The company disarms and recovers or detonates all mines.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disarmed and recovered only United States (US) mines without antihandling devices (AHDs) and that have remained in friendly control.</li> <li>b. Detonated in place all foreign mines, US mines with AHDs, booby traps, and mines that have been in control of enemy forces.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Located and marked the mines.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(2) Placed a 1-pound block of explosives primed with detonating cord directly next to the mine.</li> <li>(3) Used a line main or ring main to detonate the emplaced charges. The charges may be detonated individually.</li> <li>(4) Ensured that detonation did not take place until all personnel exited the minefield to a safe distance or area.</li> <li>c. Requested explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) personnel, if foreign mines required recovery by hand.</li> </ul> <p>5. The company proofs the minefield with electronic detectors, mine rollers, or other expedient methods to ensure that all mines are recovered or destroyed.</p> <p>6. The company commander and all subordinate leaders ensure that unit members follow safety considerations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the unit members left metal objects outside the minefield when the use of magnetically influenced fuzes was known or suspected.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the sweep-team members wore protective clothing, such as a helmet and flak vest.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the members did not run in the minefield.</li> <li>d. Advised the members to assume that all mines were equipped with AHDs.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. The company commander ensures that all required reports are sent to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the status of progress reports was sent according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>b. Ensured that the completion report was sent according to the unit's SOP.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-192-3050	DIRECT A MINE SWEEPING TEAM	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires	STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**TASK:** Disrupt Enemy Movement and Operations using Persistent and Nonpersistent Chemical Weapons (5-OPFOR-0015)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft along selected supply routes and key bases in the rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts enemy movement and operations using persistent and nonpersistent chemical weapons. 1. Delivers chemical agents in low and/or dense wooded areas. 2. Delays the movement of enemy supplies and equipment to the forward areas. 3. Restricts the movement of the enemy units in the rear area. 4. Channels the movement of enemy units into predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminates enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflicts a high rate of casualties on enemy forces.

**TASK:** Defend Minefield (5-OPFOR-0023)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting a minesweeping operation. The opposing forces (OPFOR) have a minefield placed in the enemy's path. The minefield is under constant observation and fire.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR defends a minefield against an enemy element conducting a minesweeping operation. 1. Prevents the unit from detecting the obstacle. 2. Disrupts the minesweeping operations. 3. Prevents the unit from conducting the minefield sweeping operation, prevents the unit from moving all personnel through the breach, or delays the completion of the minefield sweeping operation for more than 45 minutes.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT BREACHING OPERATIONS (05-2-0114)  
 (FM 3-34.2) (FM 101-5-1) (FM 20-32)  
 (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer company is performing continuous tactical operations in darkness and daylight under all weather conditions. The engineer company is supporting a maneuver task force (TF) with an established command or support relationship. The TF has the mission of conducting an offensive operation and has designated support, breach, and assault forces. The TF is conducting both in-stride and deliberate breaching operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company creates lanes through obstacles where directed by the TF commander to maintain the momentum of the attack. Friendly forces sustain no casualties while using the marked lanes. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander conducts troop-leading procedures with an emphasis on preparing for breaching operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified personnel and equipment needed, and task-organized platoons to reduce obstacles in support of the attack.</li> <li>b. Rehearsed the mission with platoon leaders.</li> <li>c. Ensured that each element understood their mission.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the platoon's equipment was checked for serviceability and had everything specified in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP), including those items required for the specific mission.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: An engineer company may require augmentation with additional equipment, such as the Grizzly and/or Wolverine and personnel (up to two additional platoons) to support the deliberate attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Identified engineer-required Class V munitions and requested the munitions through the maneuver unit if applicable, based on the command or support relationship.</li> <li>f. Task-organized the company and equipment to support the mission, identifying the engineer support needed for the breach, support, and assault force, with priority to the breach force.</li> <li>g. Coordinated with the maneuver commander or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) to place the unit in the TF formation.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The engineer company leadership must be very familiar with the maneuver unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP).</p> <p>2. The company conducts actions in the assembly area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed precombat checks with special emphasis on reduction assets.</li> <li>b. Linked up with the supported units, if applicable.</li> <li>c. Conducted detailed rehearsals with the supported units, if applicable.</li> </ul> <p>3. The company moves with the maneuver unit to the last covered and concealed location before the obstacle(s).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The company takes action as directed by the maneuver commander according to the maneuver unit's TSOP.</p> <p>5. The company commander positions subordinate elements well forward and integrates into the breach and assault force combat formations. The commander anticipates locations and/or events where engineer support is essential.</p> <p>6. The company commander anticipates obstacle locations based on the engineer battlefield assessment.</p> <p>7. The company supports the breaching operation.</p> <p>8. The company commander directs the engineer platoons to conduct an enemy-obstacle reconnaissance.</p> <p>9. The company commander advises the maneuver commander on the best location to bypass or reduce the obstacle(s).</p> <p>10. The company supports the breach and assault forces with priority to the breach force. The company may provide limited support to allow the support force to move into an overwatch position.</p> <p>11. The company commander directs the engineer platoon(s) supporting the breach force to reduce the tactical obstacles along the attack axis. The platoon(s) is prepared to support both mounted and dismounted attacks.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained a minimum of one lane per assaulting company or two lanes per TF.</li> <li>b. Created the lane in 10 minutes or less when personnel and equipment were exposed to direct and/or observed indirect fire.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The above 10 minutes refers to the time allowed to reduce the obstacle or to create the lane. It is the maximum time permitted for personnel and equipment to remain exposed in front of the obstacle. When covert breaching operations are conducted, or at a location where the unit is not under enemy fire, no time standard is established.</p> <p>12. The company commander retains the ability to reinforce or supplement the efforts of the forward platoons.</p> <p>13. The engineer platoon marks the lane(s) according to the unit's TSOP.</p> <p>14. The engineer platoon leader reports to higher headquarters (HQ) on the location of the lane according to the unit's TSOP.</p> <p>15. The company prepares to continue the mission.</p> <p>16. The company commander reports the location of the lanes and/or obstacles to higher HQ according to the unit's TSOP.</p> <p>17. The company conducts a lane or obstacle hand-off.</p> <p>18. The company commander directs an engineer platoon or squad to remain at the lane or obstacle to hand it over to the follow-on engineer unit. The lane or obstacle is expediently marked, and the marking method is explained to the follow-on engineer unit.</p> <p>19. The company supports the maneuver unit's assault on the objective.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

#### **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat-service-support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK:** Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**TASK:** Disrupt Enemy Movement and Operations using Persistent and Nonpersistent Chemical Weapons (5-OPFOR-0015)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft along selected supply routes and key bases in the rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts enemy movement and operations using persistent and nonpersistent chemical weapons. 1. Delivers chemical agents in low and/or dense wooded areas. 2. Delays the movement of enemy supplies and equipment to the forward areas. 3. Restricts the movement of the enemy units in the rear area. 4. Channels the movement of enemy units into predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminates enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflicts a high rate of casualties on enemy forces.

**TASK:** Defend Minefield (5-OPFOR-0023)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting a minesweeping operation. The opposing forces (OPFOR) have a minefield placed in the enemy's path. The minefield is under constant observation and fire.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR defends a minefield against an enemy element conducting a minesweeping operation. 1. Prevents the unit from detecting the obstacle. 2. Disrupts the minesweeping operations. 3. Prevents the unit from conducting the minefield sweeping operation, prevents the unit from moving all personnel through the breach, or delays the completion of the minefield sweeping operation for more than 45 minutes.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-2-0301)  
 (FM 20-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is tactically deployed. The enemy has air- and ground-surveillance capability, to include infrared sensors. Digital units have performed functionality checks of their ABCS systems and they are operational. Camouflage resources are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Vehicles, equipment, and individual fighting positions cannot be detected by ground forces within small-arms range. The element's location or identity cannot be determined through aerial photographs or ground surveillance radar (GSR). Digital units update their position through FBCB2. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader selects concealed vehicle positions and traffic routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the vehicle operators used concealed routes whenever possible, following and paralleling hedges, woods, fences, cultivated fields, and other natural terrain features.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the vehicle's track signature continued past the parked location to another logical spot.</li> </ul> <p>2. The operators maneuver vehicles along concealed routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used existing tracks.</li> <li>b. Avoided movement near terrain features (such as hilltops and road intersections) that may have been used as a reference point by the enemy's ground or aerial fires.</li> <li>c. Obliterated vehicle tracks where they turned, concealing vehicle positions.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element conceals vehicles and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positioned the vehicles and equipment under natural cover or in shadows.</li> <li>b. Positioned the vehicles and equipment so that their shape blended with the surroundings.</li> <li>c. Used natural materials to distort and combine with the shape or the shadow of the vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>d. Blended natural materials with the surrounding area.</li> <li>e. Replaced cut vegetation when it withered or changed color.</li> <li>f. Used nets to create shadows.</li> <li>g. Used camouflage-screening systems to enhance natural materials.</li> <li>h. Ensured that heat sources (generators, engines, and mess areas) were kept under screening systems, even when using natural concealment.</li> <li>i. Covered shiny objects such as windshields, headlights, cab windows, and wet vehicle bodies.</li> <li>j. Dug in (if in desert or open terrain) when the situation permitted.</li> <li>k. Concealed the vehicle track signatures in snow-covered terrain.</li> <li>l. Disguised the vehicles and equipment to change their appearance or to resemble something of lesser or greater threat to the enemy.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 4. The leaders enforce camouflage discipline. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ensured that the unit's activities did not change the area's appearance or reveal the presence of military equipment.</li> <li>Enforced measures to maintain blackout conditions at night.</li> <li>Ensured that measures were taken to eliminate or reduce noise by muffling or masking them with terrain, defilade positions, or shields.</li> <li>Ensured the prompt and complete police of the debris or spoil from the area.</li> </ol>		
* 5. The leaders know when opposing forces (OPFOR) surveillance is overhead. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Received satellite transmission (SATRAN) information from higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>Disseminated pertinent SATRAN information to subordinates.</li> <li>Incorporated SATRAN information into the tactical plan.</li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-0401.20-0001	Direct Unit Air Defense	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
01-3301.02-0011	Defend a Company Position	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
03-3711.12-0001	Implement Operations Security	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
03-8952.00-9050	Employ Directed Energy and Laser Protective Measures	STP 21-II-MQS
04-3303.02-0014	Prepare Platoon or Company Combat Orders	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
071-326-5705	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-328-5301	INSPECT PERSONNEL/EQUIPMENT	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-430-0006	CONDUCT A DEFENSE BY A PLATOON	STP 21-24-SMCT

#### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

#### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

**TASK:** Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Support a River-Crossing Operation (05-2-0600)  
 (FM 90-13) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is supporting a maneuver force during a deliberate river-crossing operation in daylight or darkness. The higher headquarters (HQ) selects the reconnaissance site; the subordinate elements complete the reconnaissance. The company is tasked to prepare and maintain a crossing site or support an assault-boat crossing, or prepare and operate engineer regulating points (ERPs). Bridging assets are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The condition of the crossing site does not interfere with the planned flow of vehicles across the river; the assault force gets to the far shore at the right time, in the right place, and in the correct order; or the ERPs facilitate a smooth traffic flow across the rafts or bridge according to the crossing schedule. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander conducts troop-leading procedures, with emphasis on preparing to support a river-crossing operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the personnel and equipment needed to support the river crossing.</li> <li>b. Rehearsed the mission with the platoon leaders.</li> <li>c. Ensured that each element understood the mission.</li> <li>d. Ensured that each platoon's equipment was checked for serviceability and that each platoon had everything required for the specified mission.</li> <li>e. Task organized the company to support the mission and identified the organic personnel and equipment support needed for preparing ERPs and crossing sites.</li> <li>f. Coordinated with the battalion's Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) to obtain any additional specific details of the mission and, if needed, requested augmentation support.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The company supports an assault-boat crossing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the assault boats.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Inflated the boats.</li> <li>(2) Checked for the proper equipment.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Ensured that enough paddles for a silent crossing were available: 11 per boat.</li> <li>(b) Ensured that outboard motors (OBMs) for a powered crossing were available.</li> <li>(c) Ensured that enough floatation devices were available: 1 per soldier.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(3) Ensured that one boat per assault site was designated as a safety boat, if practical. That boat should be powered by an OBM, if available.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Rehearsed the crossing with the assaulting force in both day and night conditions.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Designated an engineer crossing-control officer to supervise the embarkation of the assault waves and follow-up force at each assault site.</p> <p>d. Designated an engineer landing officer to control the debarkation on the far shore.</p> <p>e. Marked the far-shore exit points, ensuring that each boat had a specific landing point. The point should be visible during daylight and under reduced visibility conditions.</p> <p>f. Established dismounted rally points on the near shore to link up the assaulting forces with the boats.</p> <p>NOTE: Each assaulting wave may use the same rally points as the previous wave.</p> <p>(1) Crossed each assaulting force in the order designated in the operation order (OPORD) and the crossing plan.</p> <p>(2) Manned the rally points.</p> <p>g. Operated the assault boats.</p> <p>(1) Operated each boat with three engineers during a silent crossing or two engineers during a powered crossing.</p> <p>(2) Utilized enough passengers in a silent crossing to paddle and control the boat across the river.</p> <p>NOTE: The RB-15 has a maximum capacity of 15 passengers. However, equipment required during the assault may reduce the number of passengers the boat can safely carry. The distance across the river and the current are the governing factors. If conditions permit, each boat should carry squad-size elements to maintain squad integrity.</p> <p>(3) Maintained the assault boats on line and in the order specified by the maneuver crossing force.</p> <p>(4) Landed the boats in the correct location on the far shore.</p> <p>h. Deflated the boats on the far shore or returned them to the near shore for another wave of assault troops. Boats that were returned for another wave arrived at the correct location on the near shore to facilitate a smooth linkup with follow-on forces.</p> <p>i. Repeated the procedure in subtask 2g until all assault waves had crossed.</p> <p>3. The company identifies and maintains a crossing site when ordered.</p> <p>a. Identified a crossing site, through a map or ground reconnaissance, with the following characteristics:</p> <p>(1) Selected a site at the narrow part of the river.</p> <p>(2) Ensured that the current was less than 1.5 meters per second (MPS), if possible.</p> <p>(3) Confirmed that both access and egress routes were available on both banks.</p> <p>(4) Ensured that bank slopes were less than 33 percent for an amphibious vehicle swim site.</p> <p>(5) Ensured that the appropriate bank height for a--</p> <p>(a) Raft with ramps was no greater than 1 meter for vertical banks.</p> <p>(b) M4T6 or class-60 bridge was 76 centimeters.</p> <p>(c) Ribbon bridge or raft was 1 meter.</p> <p>(6) Checked for adequate water depth ensuring that it was--</p> <p>(a) Two meters for amphibious vehicles.</p> <p>(b) Over 127 centimeters for shallow draft, bridge-erection boats; light tactical rafts; and ribbon bridges.</p> <p>(c) One hundred two centimeters for a 27-foot bridge erection boat.</p> <p>(d) Seventy-five centimeters for a M4T6.</p> <p>(7) Selected a site where the river bottom was free of obstructions that could interfere with amphibious vehicles, boats, or rafts.</p> <p>b. Prepared the crossing site for heavy equipment.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Covered the entry bank with mobile matting or a gravel base to maintain trafficability.</p> <p>(2) Prepared the exit bank with the same considerations as the entrance bank. Ensured that vehicles swimming across were able to get up the exit bank.</p> <p>(3) Marked the entry and exit points for both day and night crossings according to the OPORD.</p> <p>(4) Ensured that the width of the entry and exit banks matched the width required for the crossing vehicles.</p> <p>c. Ensured that the crossing-site conditions did not interfere with swim, raft, or bridge operations.</p> <p>4. The company prepares and operates ERPs in staging or holding areas or at crossing sites.</p> <p>a. Provided enough space in a covered and concealed location for vehicles moving to the crossing site.</p> <p>b. Located ERPs on or near access routes to the crossing site. The travel time from the ERP to the crossing site was less than the round-trip crossing time for a raft.</p> <p>c. Checked the vehicles at the ERP.</p> <p>(1) At ERPs outside of the crossing area--</p> <p>(a) Briefed drivers on raft or bridge crossing requirements.</p> <p>(b) Ensured that vehicle weights did not exceed the raft or bridge capacity.</p> <p>(c) Diverted the over-class vehicles.</p> <p>(2) At ERPs before the raft sites--</p> <p>(a) Identified the carrying capacity of the rafting or bridging equipment.</p> <p>(b) Established raft loads that preserved unit integrity.</p> <p>(c) Guided the vehicles to the rafts.</p> <p>(3) At ERPs before the bridge sites--</p> <p>(a) Diverted the over-class vehicles.</p> <p>(b) Guided the vehicles within the crossing site to facilitate a smooth traffic flow. Ensured that the vehicles maintained 100-foot spacing and did not exceed 40 kilometers per hour (kph) on bridges during normal crossings.</p> <p>5. The company commander submits progress reports to higher HQ.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

### **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** PREPARE EXPEDIENT FORDS (05-2-0603)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 3-34.2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives an operation order (OPORD) to construct an expedient ford. The mission statement specifies a site location, traffic density (vehicle types and numbers), and a completion time. Digital units have performed functionality checks of digital systems and are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element constructs a ford providing unimpeded passage of the traffic density for which it was designed. Gaps of 50 meters or less are prepared in one hour. Gaps of more than 50 meters are prepared in two hours. Digital units report the location and any additional reports via digital means to update the common operational picture (COP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The platoon constructs the approaches to the ford. a. Sloped the approaches no greater than 1:3 for wheeled vehicles and 1:2 for tracked vehicles. b. Placed the material removed from the banks to the side, not in the stream. 2. The platoon prepares the ford bottom. a. Filled the short, deep gaps with rock or gravel. b. Prepared the soft-mud bottom with tree limbs, brush, or timbers, and then covered it with rock or coarse gravel. c. Ensured that the width was 6 meters, plus or minus 1 meter. 3. The platoon marks the edges of the ford placing the poles 1.5 meters apart across the stream width on both sides of the ford, and at least 1.5 meters above the water level. 4. The platoon leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-217-35-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Conduct Air-Assault (AA) Operations (05-2-0906)  
 (FM 90-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A company has received an operation order (OPORD) to conduct an air assault. The enemy has the capability to engage the unit with air, indirect fire, and small (squad-size) elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company's main body is not caught by surprise at the pick-up zone (PZ) and the landing zone (LZ). The company's main body is prepared for movement according to the time and the place specified in the OPORD. Each helicopter is loaded within 30 seconds of the crew chief's signal. Sufficient (a 75 percent minimum) leaders, personnel, and equipment are moved to the LZ to accomplish the mission. The company exits the LZ within 20 minutes of their arrival. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander performs an engineer estimate. The company commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the reverse planning sequence to plan the--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ground tactical plan.</li> <li>(2) Landing plan.</li> <li>(3) Air movement plan.</li> <li>(4) Staging plan.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Developed, along with the Operations and Training Officer (US Army )(S3) or the air-mission commander (AMC), a landing plan to include the--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Landing times.</li> <li>(2) Landing formations.</li> <li>(3) Assembly instructions.</li> <li>(4) Security tasks.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Chose the LZ locations that best supported the ground tactical plan. The LZ locations--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Were identified easily from the air.</li> <li>(2) Provided the best location according to the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). The location was on, near, or away from the objective (depending on METT-TC).</li> <li>(3) Provided adequate space for the company to perform landing operations. The LZ was capable of supporting all helicopters at once.</li> <li>(4) Provided surface conditions to support the helicopters, without interfering with their operation.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Provided landing conditions in the LZ and PZ which did not conceal the touchdown point or create hazards during landing operations, such as sand, blowing dust, or snow.</li> <li>(b) Provided a surface free of obstacles that could damage the helicopters, such as stumps or large rocks.</li> <li>(c) Provided drainage to accommodate the rainfall runoff.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The surface should be free of chemical or radiological contamination.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(5) Provided an area free of obstacles on the glide path, with a glide ratio of 10:1 and a landing surface. All obstacles within the LZ and the PZ were marked with red lights at night (turned on only when the LZ or the PZ was in immediate use) or red panels during the day. The markers were not used when the position could be seen by the enemy.</li> <li>(6) Provided a ground slope of less than 8 percent.</li> <li>(7) Provided cover and concealment along the LZ perimeter.</li> <li>(8) Were secured by ground forces (if necessary).</li> <li>d. Developed an air movement plan (in coordination with the AMC) that supported the landing plan and the ground tactical plan. The plan--             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Included the location of the primary and alternate PZs.</li> <li>(2) Provided lift and chalk assignments for the subordinate elements. These assignments--                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Provided cross-loading for the leaders and key personnel on the various helicopters.</li> <li>(b) Maintained integrity by keeping the squads and fire teams together.</li> <li>(c) Provided self-sufficiency of the loads, such as machine guns and their crews, on the each helicopter.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(3) Provided PZ control measures and responsibilities for the leaders, to include the--                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Helicopter landing formations and the locations of the company elements.</li> <li>(b) Sequence of the helicopter loading (air loading table).</li> <li>(c) Designated the equipment and the personnel to be bumped (if necessary) from each helicopter. The bumped personnel reported to the straggler control point.</li> <li>(d) Assigned platoon members to secure sectors in the PZ.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Developed a landing plan that best supported the air-movement plan. The plan included the--             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Development of tentative flight routes.</li> <li>(2) Designation of a start and release point.</li> <li>(3) Air-movement table.</li> <li>(4) Flight routes.</li> <li>(5) En-route formations.</li> <li>(6) Air-movement timing.</li> </ul> </li> <li>f. Developed a staging plan (in coordination with the AMC) that linked the aviation and maneuver units. The staging plan--             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Included the arrival time of the troops, equipment, and supplies at the PZ, in the order specified for movement.</li> <li>(2) Specified the PZ's flight routes and the aerial linkup of the aviation units.</li> <li>(3) Determined the arrival time of the unit at the PZ (before the helicopters).</li> </ul> </li> <li>g. Issued an OPORD to all assigned and attached elements, including the AMC. The commander--             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Clarified any questions.</li> <li>(2) Used no more than one-third of the available planning time.</li> <li>(3) Required subordinate leaders to back brief their plans.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. The company moves to the PZ. The company--             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved using the movement techniques consistent with the enemy situation.</li> <li>b. Positioned the platoons, elements, and weapons in a defensive position around the PZ positions.</li> <li>c. Positioned the units according to the load plans.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>3. The company loads the helicopters, as directed by the chalk leaders. The company--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Followed the load plans.</li> <li>b. Executed the bump plan and used straggler control (if multiple lifts were used).</li> <li>c. Adjusted to the changes in the number or types of helicopters.</li> <li>d. Maintained security during the loading procedures. Repositioned defensive positions, as necessary, for multiple lifts.</li> <li>e. Approached the helicopter from the side at double time.</li> <li>f. Ensured that the safety measures were adhered to. The leaders ensured that the personnel kept low when approaching and departing a helicopter (especially on slopes), kept their weapons on safe, fastened their seat belts, and kept their hand grenades secure.</li> </ul> <p>4. The company arrives and secures the LZ. The company personnel--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Dismounted the helicopter immediately upon landing.</li> <li>b. Moved out 20 meters from the sides of the helicopter and assumed the prone firing position, facing outward.</li> <li>c. Watched for the enemy and waited for the helicopters to depart the LZ.</li> <li>d. Moved to their assigned positions to provide all-round security.</li> </ul> <p>5. The company consolidates and prepares for the mission. The company--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established communication with higher headquarters within 10 minutes.</li> <li>b. Accounted for all personnel and equipment.</li> <li>c. Forwarded the situation reports (SITREP) to higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. Evacuated casualties (if any) on departing helicopters.</li> <li>e. Moved off the LZ within 20 minutes of their arrival.</li> </ul> <p>6. The company continues the mission according to the ground tactical plan or as modified based on the ground situation</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat-service-support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK:** Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-2-0911)  
 (FM 55-30) (FM 21-75) (FM 24-19)  
 (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 71-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A convoy's main body is attacked by a squad- to platoon-size force. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The convoy protects itself and attacks or disengages the enemy. The convoy minimizes casualties or damage due to inadequate immediate-action measures. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The convoy commander prepares for combat operations. The convoy commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated and positioned the security elements throughout the convoy (front, rear, and flank).</li> <li>b. Established radio communications with the security elements.</li> <li>c. Designated actions upon enemy contact (action front, left, right, or rear; air attack; or indirect fire).</li> <li>d. Assigned each armed vehicle a sector of fire for the move. Ensured that the convoy had 360-degree coverage while moving.</li> <li>e. Designated en route rally points and the actions taken at those points.</li> <li>f. Coordinated with the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army ) (S3) for indirect fire along the planned route.</li> <li>g. Received a digital update from the battalion Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) on probable enemy actions influencing the convoy route or the mission.</li> </ul> <p>2. The convoy prepares for combat operations. The convoy--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Loaded the vehicles, stowed or tied down all loose equipment, and ensured that there was enough space to bring weapons to bear. Air guards were present.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the weapons were functional and had their basic load of ammunition.</li> <li>c. Rehearsed the procedures for enemy contact before the start point (SP).</li> <li>d. Ensured that each vehicle commander knew the route and all procedures.</li> </ul> <p>3. The convoy reacts to enemy contact. The convoy--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Scanned the area for the enemy and returned fire at the identified enemy positions.</li> <li>b. Sought available cover.</li> <li>c. Maneuvered the vehicles to allow the gunner to engage the enemy. Moved all unarmed vehicles to cover.</li> <li>d. Provided suppressive gunnery fire on the enemy.</li> <li>e. Deployed the security teams and reported the situation to the convoy commander.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 4. The convoy commander develops the situation. The convoy commander-</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated the fire and maneuver.</li> <li>b. Requested indirect-fire support.</li> <li>c. Sought information on the enemy's strength, composition, and disposition. The convoy commander evaluated the direction and the volume of the enemy fire, the confirmed or suspected enemy positions, and the terrain capacity for the masking forces.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The convoy commander selects a course of action based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and the developing situation. The convoy commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maneuvered to attack the enemy's flank.</li> <li>b. Conducted a frontal assault.</li> <li>c. Broke contact and moved away from the enemy position by fire and maneuver.</li> </ul> <p>6. The security element engages the enemy (within capabilities).</p> <p>* 7. The convoy commander reports the tactical situation to higher headquarters.</p> <p>8. The unit reorganizes and resumes its convoy. The unit--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reconstituted the security force.</li> <li>b. Treated and evacuated casualties.</li> <li>c. Reported casualties.</li> <li>d. Redistributed the ammunition and equipment.</li> <li>e. Recovered any damaged equipment or destroyed it in place.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
03-4966.90-0010	Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services	STP 21-II-MQS
03-5101.00-0282	Direct the Storage of Unit Supplies, Weapons, Equipment, and Ammunition	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
03-5101.00-0283	Supervise the Maintenance of Unit Prescribed Load List	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
052-194-3500	CONDUCT A PATROL	STP 21-I-MQS STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG
061-283-1002	LOCATE A TARGET BY GRID COORDINATES	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
071-326-5605	Control Movement of a Fire Team	STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP 5-12B24-SM-TG
071-326-5611	Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad	STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP 5-12B24-SM-TG
071-332-5022	PREPARE A BATTALION SITUATION REPORT (SITREP)	STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP 21-24-SMCT
081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation	STP 21-24-SMCT
091-309-0711	DIRECT VEHICLE AND EQUIPMENT RECOVERY OPERATIONS	STP 21-24-SMCT
113-573-0002	CONDUCT OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) PROCEDURES	STP 21-24-SMCT
113-573-8006	USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)	STP 21-24-SMCT
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**TASK:** Surrender to the Capturing Unit on the Battlefield (5-OPFOR-0024)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has captured opposing forces' (OPFOR) soldiers, documents, and equipment sensitive to the OPFOR tactical operations.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR soldiers retain or destroy documents and equipment. The OPFOR surrenders the documents and the equipment of no tactical use to the enemy and attempts to conceal or destroy items of tactical value. The OPFOR attempts escape and evasion. 1. Prevents the successful capture of the documents and the equipment. 2. Destroys the documents and the equipment. 3. Removes identifying markings from the equipment. 4. Removes unit-identifying insignia. 5. Provides misleading information. 6. Plans an escape. 7. Delays movement to the nearest collection point. 8. Prevents safeguarding of the enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) in order to cause embarrassment to the United States (US).

**ELEMENTS:** 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Conduct Self-Extraction from Remotely-Delivered Mines (05-3-0113)  
(FM 20-32) (FM 5-250) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is supporting a construction mission in a tactical environment. Remotely-delivered mines impact on or around the element. The personnel have fragmentation armor and ballistic glasses (if available). Each vehicle is equipped with 30 meters of line and light grapnels. The digital units have performed functionality checks of their digital systems and have communications, digitally or frequency modulated (FM) to the task force (TF). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company extracts all vehicles and personnel from the minefield. Digital units update the common operational picture as time permits via digital means and maintains radio communications. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-area protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The individual who first discovers a mine initiates the alarm according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>2. The command post (CP) personnel receive the alarm and alert the units. The CP personnel--               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Notified all of the elements. If the element was--                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Mounted, it accelerated and moved out of the area. When tactically feasible, the element moved in a column along a hard-surfaced road, watching for mines along the route.</li> <li>(2) Dismounted, it moved rapidly out of the area along the best-cleared route, watching for mines and trip wires.</li> <li>(3) Dismounted and deployed in a bivouac or assembly area (AA), it departed immediately along a hard-surfaced road (if practical), watching for mines along the route. The element abandoned all equipment and vehicles that came in contact with mines.</li> <li>(4) Not able to depart immediately, it remained in covered or protected positions until the minefield was deployed. The element carefully cleared the mines from the positions through detonation and departed as soon as it was feasible, following a hard-surfaced road (if practical) and watching for mines along the route. The element abandoned all equipment and vehicles that came in contact with mines.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Informed the higher HQ and adjacent units of the situation. The CP personnel included a description of the mines and the extent to which they were employed.</li> <li>c. Requested counterbattery fire (if the mines were artillery-delivered).</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The vehicle commanders check the immediate area. The element personnel remove the mines and the trip wires from the vehicles. The vehicle commanders--               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Dismounted and inspected the vehicles for mines and trip wires.</li> <li>b. Removed the trip wires from the soft-skinned vehicles using a grapnel or a similar device.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: When using a grapnel to remove trip wires, throw the grapnel away from the covered position. Sound a warning to others in the area before throwing the grapnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Left any vehicles touching or blocked in by antitank (AT) mines until the remainder of the unit was out of the minefield.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The element leaders identify unmovable vehicles and designate one or more lanes as exit lanes to allow remaining personnel and vehicles to leave the minefield, normally along previously used access routes.</p> <p>5. The element personnel mark designated lanes and destroy or remove mines within them. The element personnel--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used visual means to locate mines and mark vehicle lanes. The lanes were at least 5 meters wide. The element personnel marked lanes according to the tactical situation and threat; however, the marked areas also allowed for personnel to reenter the minefield and recover equipment or vehicles.</li> <li>b. Destroyed or removed all mines in the lanes, using a grapnel hook or other means, as directed by the company commander. The element personnel detonated only unmovable mines, reducing the likelihood of fragmentation injuries and equipment damage.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The vehicle commanders direct the personnel ground-guiding the vehicles out of the minefield. The vehicle commanders--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the individual elements moved only when directed to do so by the chain of command.</li> <li>b. Placed any equipment not in contact with a mine or a trip wire onto the vehicles.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the individual crews ground-guided the vehicles to a designated lane or allowed the vehicles to exit the minefield on their own.</li> </ul> <p>7. The company personnel remove any equipment or vehicles remaining after the initial extraction from the minefield. The company personnel--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reentered the minefield using the same exit routes.</li> <li>b. Detonated the minimum number of mines necessary to remove the vehicles or equipment from the minefield.</li> <li>c. Avoided contact with mines and took all possible precautions to ensure that they were not jarred.</li> <li>d. Placed sandbags near the mines to minimize vehicle and equipment damage.</li> <li>e. Removed mines from the equipment using a line or other remote means, and ensured that all personnel remained at a safe distance.</li> <li>f. Placed explosive charges to minimize vehicle damage when detonating mines on the ground.</li> </ul> <p>8. If the position cannot be evacuated, the element personnel clear sufficient mines to allow for mission accomplishment. The element personnel--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Cleared the communication lanes between the positions.</li> <li>b. Marked the communication lanes between the positions.</li> <li>c. Placed sandbags around mines to prevent injury and damage to the equipment from detonation.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

#### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

**TASK:** Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat-service-support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK:** Defend Minefield (5-OPFOR-0023)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting a minesweeping operation. The opposing forces (OPFOR) have a minefield placed in the enemy's path. The minefield is under constant observation and fire.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR defends a minefield against an enemy element conducting a minesweeping operation. 1. Prevents the unit from detecting the obstacle. 2. Disrupts the minesweeping operations. 3. Prevents the unit from conducting the minefield sweeping operation, prevents the unit from moving all personnel through the breach, or delays the completion of the minefield sweeping operation for more than 45 minutes.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** EMLACE A HASTY PROTECTIVE ROW MINEFIELD (05-3-0115)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 20-32)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a field environment, an order has been given to emplace a hasty protective row minefield, copies of Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355-1-R, M15 and M21 antitank (AT) mines, and M16A1 (Korea only) and M18A1 antipersonnel (AP) mines. Digital units may receive orders and submit reports through digital means. The time to conduct a reconnaissance of the area is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All mines are placed where they can be observed and covered by fires. AT mines are placed in order to affect likely enemy-mounted avenues of approach (AAs). AP mines are intermixed with AT mines and affect dismounted approaches. Minefields are marked and guarded. DA Form 1355-1-R is completed and submitted to the next higher headquarters (HQ). Digital units will update FBCB2 and appropriate systems to update the location of obstacles and the common operational picture (COP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The squad leader reports on DA Form 1355-1-R the intention to lay a hasty protective row minefield.                      NOTE: The report of intention is made as soon as it is decided to lay the minefield. This is the first of three reports and all must be sent in a secure manner. The brigade commander has the initial authority to employ hasty protective row minefields. He may delegate emplacement authority to the battalion or company commanders on a mission basis. This information and authorization is found in the operation order (OPORD) which is passed to the platoon level.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the location of the minefield.</li> <li>b. Estimated the number and types of mines to be laid.</li> <li>c. Determined whether the mines would be surface-laid or buried.</li> <li>d. Determined the proposed date and time for starting and completing.</li> </ul> <p>2. The tank commander (TC) and the driver remain with the vehicle to provide needed security.</p> <p>3. The TC maneuvers the vehicle using a covered and concealed route to the selected location of the minefield.                      NOTE: In most situations the squad works together to emplace the minefield.</p> <p>4. If not already there, the TC and the driver move their vehicle to an overwatch position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used cover and concealment.</li> <li>b. Moved into a hull-down position, if possible.</li> <li>c. Covered likely enemy positions.</li> </ul> <p>5. The squad leader and team leaders conduct a reconnaissance of the proposed minefield area to identify mine locations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Covered likely enemy AAs.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Enhanced key weapons systems.</p> <p>c. Covered dead space.</p> <p>d. Could have been seen by the defending elements.</p> <p>6. The squad leader and team leaders return to draw mines and needed equipment to emplace the minefield.</p> <p>7. The squad leader reports the initiation of the minefield.</p> <p>a. Specified the start time of the mine emplacement.</p> <p>b. Specified the exact location of the minefield.</p> <p>c. Specified the target number of the minefield.</p> <p>8. The squad emplaces the mines.</p> <p>NOTE: The mines are not armed and do not have trip wires attached. Only metallic mines are used. No booby traps or antihandling devices will be used. A general rule of thumb for spacing AT and AP mines is to place them no closer than 4 meters. There is no maximum distance; however, it should not pose any tactical impact.</p> <p>a. Installed the mines.</p> <p>(1) Placed the end markers at the end of each row. The markers were labeled with the letter of the row, the number one for one end of the row, and the number two for the other end.</p> <p>NOTE: Markers should be easily identifiable objects such as a steel picket.</p> <p>(2) Placed individual mines far enough apart to prevent simultaneous detonation.</p> <p>NOTE: The mines should be no closer than 4 meters. The distance from the row end marker to the first mine in the row is the distance between all of the mines in that row.</p> <p>(3) Emplaced the rows outside of the hand-grenade range, but within the range of small-caliber weapons.</p> <p>b. Emplaced AT mines so that they would affect likely AAs.</p> <p>c. Emplaced AP mines so that they were intermixed with AT mines to deny the enemy dismounted AAs. (M18A1 AP mines will be command detonated when NOT used in Korea. M16A1 AP mines will be used in Korea only.)</p> <p>(1) Buried M21 AT mines with only the tilt rod exposed.</p> <p>(2) If time permitted, the rod was camouflaged with brush or tall grass.</p> <p>(3) Buried M16A1 AP mines (Korea mines only) up to the bottom of the release pin ring leaving only the pressure prongs above ground. This provided the stability required for proper employment.</p> <p>9. The squad leader records the minefield on DA Form 1355-1-R.</p> <p>NOTE: All measurements will be recorded in meters on DA Form 1355-1-R.</p> <p>a. Selected and recorded an easily identifiable and relatively permanent reference point (RP) in front of his position.</p> <p>NOTE: A good RP should have some degree of survivability from an artillery barrage.</p> <p>b. Determined the scale to be used in plotting the minefield on the form.</p> <p>NOTE: The following formula is used to determine the scale. The distance from the RP to the farthest point in the minefield plus 10 meters and divided by four equals the scale. Adding the 10 meters is a safety margin to ensure that the sum of the minefield sketch is entirely contained within the largest ring. Dividing by four is a constant and represents the concentric rings on DA Form 1355-1-R.</p> <p>c. Plotted the RP in the center of the circles on the form.</p> <p>NOTE: The row closest to the enemy is designated by using an "A" while "B" and "C" are used for succeeding rows and so on.</p> <p>d. Indicated the end of each row marker by labeling it with the letter of the row: a number one for one end of the row and a number two for the other end.</p> <p>e. Recorded the azimuth and the distance to the last row.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: Determine the magnetic azimuth in degrees from the RP to the first row marker and record it as "B1." Use "B1" if there are two rows, "C1" if there are three rows, and so forth. This marks the beginning of that row.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Recorded the azimuth and the distance to the next row which would be "A1" in this case.</li> <li>g. Measured and recorded the distance and the azimuth to each row marker.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Measure the distance and the azimuth from "A1" to the first mine to be recorded and then measure the distance and the azimuth from the first mine to the second mine and so on until all mine locations are recorded. Continue this procedure for each row. As each mine is recorded, assign it a number to identify it in the tabular block of DA Form 1355-1-R.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>h. Measured and recorded the distance and the azimuth from the RP to "B2" and from "B2" to "A2."</li> <li>i. Tied in the RP with a permanent landmark.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: This landmark may be used to help relocate the minefield should it be abandoned.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>j. Completed the tabular information blocks by specifying the unit and the precise description of the RP, the kind and type of markers used to identify the rows, the map sheet number, the name, the signature of the officer in charge (OIC) or the noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC), the time, and the date. Describe how the minefield was measured in the "remarks" block; for example, the minefield was paced out and paces were multiplied by 0.75.</li> </ul> <p>10. The squad arms the mines.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Worked from the enemy side to the friendly side.</li> <li>b. Camouflaged the mines, if time permitted.</li> </ul> <p>11. The squad leader recovers mine safeties and shipping plugs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Collected and stored safeties, shipping plugs, and any related items in a waterproof container.</li> <li>b. Recorded the items and their location in the "remarks" block on DA Form 1355-1-R.</li> <li>c. Informed the squad members of the location of DA Form 1355-1-R, shipping plugs, and safeties.</li> </ul> <p>12. The squad leader reports the completion of laying the minefield.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported to the authorizing commander, by using a secure means, that the minefield had been completed.</li> <li>b. Submitted the completed DA Form 1355-1-R to the authorizing commander.</li> </ul> <p>13. The squad leader makes sure that the minefield is kept under observation at all times to prevent the enemy from breaching or booby-trapping the mines.</p> <p>14. The squad leader establishes a guard to protect friendly troops and noncombatants from entering the mined area. If AP mines are used in the minefield and are to remain in place for longer than 72 hours, the minefield must be fenced on all sides.</p> <p>15. The squad leader submits additional reports, as necessary.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Submitted oral progress reports, during the emplacing process, concerning the amount of work completed.</li> <li>b. Submitted a written report of transfer, if responsibility for a minefield had been altered.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-329-1002	DETERMINE THE GRID COORDINATES OF A POINT ON A MILITARY MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

#### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

**TASK:** Defeat Obstacles (5-OPFOR-0009)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

**STANDARD:** Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** REMOVE HASTY PROTECTIVE ROW MINEFIELD (05-3-0116)  
 (FM 20-32)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a field environment, an order has been received from your higher headquarters (HQ) to remove the hasty protective row minefield that your element emplaced within your assigned sector. Digital units may receive orders via digital means. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All mines are rendered safe and are removed, or accounted for, without damage to the mines or injury to personnel. All mines are repacked and stored according to the standing operating procedure (SOP). A report of change is filed and maintained until all the mines are disarmed and removed. Digital units will submit reports through either FM or digital means, updating the common operational picture (COP). The time required to conduct this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The tank commander (TC) and the driver provide overwatch and security for personnel removing the minefield.                      NOTE: Squad members work together to accomplish this type of mission.</p> <p>2. The squad leader directs the overwatch elements to a position that affords the best observation of the minefield and beyond.                      a. If necessary, the security force employed smoke on the far side to conceal mine removal.                      b. The security force remained in position overwatching the removal team until the minefield was cleared.</p> <p>3. The squad leader determines the best method for removing the mines.                      a. If the minefield had been under constant observation from the time it was laid and had not been tampered with, the squad leader directed the personnel who laid the mines to pick up the same mines. The squad leader used Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355-1-R to direct the squad members as to the location and types of mines to be removed.                      b. If the minefield had not been under constant observation and may have been tampered with, or the personnel who laid the mines were not available or did not remember the location of the mines, the squad leader used DA Form 1355-1-R with the mine detectors to direct squad members as to the location and types of mines to be removed.</p> <p>4. The squad leader retrieves safeties, shipping plugs, and any other items that accompanied the emplaced mines.</p> <p>5. The removal team locates "safeties" and removes the mines within the minefield.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: The removal team starts at the reference point (RP) and moves to "B1" using the azimuth and the distance provided on DA Form 1355-1-R; then the team moves from "B1" to the mine and removes the mine. If "B1" is destroyed, the team moves from the RP to "B2" using that azimuth and distance. The team then shoots a back azimuth (subtract 180 degrees) from the recorded azimuth from "B2" to the first mine and removes the mine. This process is continued until all the mines are removed. The stakes at "A1," "B1," "A2," and "B2" are necessary because it's safer to find a stake than to find an armed mine.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Observed basic safety precautions by maintaining a distance of 30-meters between removal personnel. Removal personnel did not run and only moved around in cleared areas.</li> <li>b. Started with the row closest to the defender and worked away from it.</li> <li>c. Checked the sides and bottoms of the mines for antihandling devices (AHDs) and disarmed them as they were found.</li> </ol> <p>NOTE: AHDs are not used in hasty protective row minefields. However, as a safety precaution, all mines are considered to be equipped with AHDs until proven otherwise.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Replaced all pins, clips, or other safety devices before the mine was removed from the ground.</li> <li>e. If equipped, turned any arming dials to "safe" or "unarmed."</li> <li>f. If the mine had a screw-type fuze, removed the fuze and took it away from the mine. If the detonator was not built-in, the team took the fuze from the mine.</li> <li>g. Lifted the mine from the hole after it had been placed on "safe." <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) If the mine was put in place and kept in sight by the individual who removed it, he lifted it directly from the hole after rendering it "safe."</li> <li>(2) If the mine had not been kept in sight, attached a 60-meter long rope or wire around the mine, took cover, and pulled the mine from the hole.</li> </ol> </li> <li>h. Placed a tick mark on DA Form 1355-1-R beside each mine as it was removed.</li> </ol> <p>6. The removal team assembles all the mines in one location for accountability.</p> <p>7. The squad leader confirms the "safety" of the mines and accounts for the number and types of mines as recorded on DA Form 1355-1-R.</p> <p>NOTE: The squad leader may find it necessary to confirm an exploded mine to account for all of the mines. To confirm a mine explosion, if it is not witnessed, place a tick mark on the DA Form 1355-1-R beside each mine as it is removed. If a crater is found in the vicinity of a mine, make sure it was caused by a land mine and not artillery. Depending on the size of the mine, a mine crater is shallow, circular, and shows traces of burnt soil. The impact and the soil dispersion of artillery is generally elongated.</p> <p>8. The removal team cleans and repacks the mines for future use.</p> <p>NOTE: This is honed only after the squad leader confirms each mine has been disarmed and safe.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Repacked mines in their original containers and cased them to keep them functional and safe for future use.</li> <li>b. Stored the mines according to the unit SOP.</li> </ol> <p>9. The removal team removes and stores the row markers for future use.</p> <p>10. The squad leader submits a report of change to his higher HQ stating that the minefield has been removed and the area is cleared.</p> <p>NOTE: The commander is responsible for the surveillance and the maintenance of the minefield and makes a report of change as soon as any mines are removed.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
11. The squad leader destroys DA Form 1355-1-R after the minefield has been removed and the report of change has been sent.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-192-1021	Locate Mines by Visual Means	STP 5-12B1-SM STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS
052-192-3050	DIRECT A MINE SWEEPING TEAM	STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** Defeat Obstacles (5-OPFOR-0009)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

**STANDARD:** Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** COUNTER PASSAGE OF LINES (5-OPFOR-0012)

**CONDITION:** Enemy forces are in defensive positions, but they are expected to attempt passage-of-lines operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) received orders to disrupt enemy passage-of-lines operations.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays or prevents enemy passage-of-lines. 1. Delays the passage. 2. Prevents the company from moving all personnel through the stationary unit. 3. Engages the main body of either the moving or the stationary unit.

**ELEMENT:** 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ

**TASK:** Disable Critical Equipment and Material (05-3-0210)

(FM 5-250)

(TM 750-244-2)

(TM 750-244-3)

(TM 750-244-6)

(TM 750-244-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An enemy assault penetrates the element's position. The element leader is ordered to evacuate the position and disable those items that the platoon cannot haul or move. Digital units have performed functionality checks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element evacuates the position and disables all critical items that cannot be hauled or moved. Digital units can send and receive reports via digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The platoon leader prioritizes the equipment to be disabled.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used information in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>b. Identified critical equipment as communication (radios and keying material), transportation assets (tracked and wheeled vehicles and construction equipment), barrier material (mines, wire, and explosives), and weapons systems.</li> <li>c. Prioritized the disabling of the equipment based on its value to the enemy.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The platoon leader determines the method for disabling tracked and wheeled vehicles, including the construction equipment, and directs the unit members.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Smashed vital elements, such as the gearbox, the starter, the battery, the engine block, the transmission, the instrument panel, and any of the communications equipment.</li> <li>b. Drained the hydraulic system and cut the hoses.</li> <li>c. Used explosives to disable transportation assets, such as tracked or wheeled vehicles and trailers.</li> <li>d. Used a bayonet or another cutting tool to slash all tires.</li> <li>e. Drained the oil and ran the engine until it seized.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The platoon leader determines the method for disabling the communications equipment and directs the unit members.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Smashed vital elements using an ax, a pick, a sledgehammer, or any heavy implement. Smashed all the dials, knobs, and gauges and demolished all the antennas.</li> <li>b. Used explosives to disable the communications equipment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The platoon leader determines the amount of barrier material (the mines, the wire, and the explosives) to use and destroys the remaining items with explosives.</li> <li>* 5. The platoon leader determines the method for disabling an organic bridge with demolitions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Considered whether to use partial or complete destruction.</li> <li>b. Considered the quantity and the type of explosive.</li> <li>c. Considered whether to use an electric or a nonelectric firing system.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Considered what the appropriate time would be to disable or demolish the bridge. e. Considered the method of coordination to use with adjacent forces. 6. The platoon's members disable critical equipment during the evacuation according to the platoon leader's plan. * 7. The platoon leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit SOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions (05-3-0304)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 5-103)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is supporting a maneuver unit in establishing a defensive position. The supported unit has occupied the position. The element has organic equipment. Digital units have performed functionality checks of digital systems and have situational awareness (SA) and the common operational picture (COP). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element constructs vehicle fighting positions providing protection from direct and indirect fire without restricting the operational capability of the weapon system. The dimensions of the positions and the time standards for construction are according to Field Manual (FM) 5-103. Digital units have the capability to send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The platoon leader coordinates with the maneuver commander to determine the type and the location of the positions.</p> <p>* 2. The platoon leader estimates the completion time based on the maneuver-unit vehicles and the positions required; he uses the unit's planning factors to estimate the completion time.</p> <p>* 3. The platoon leader prioritizes construction based on the directives from the maneuver commander.</p> <p>4. The platoon constructs the positions in the order of the commander's priorities.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Prepared hasty positions for the fighting vehicles. Formed parapets around the vehicles to improve protection from the high-explosive antitank (HEAT) projectiles and provided limited concealment.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Excavated and built up a frontal parapet as high as practical without interfering with the vehicle's weapon system.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(2) Improved protection by excavating deeper and extending the parapet around the vehicle sides.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(3) Improved hasty positions to deliberate positions, as time permitted.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Prepared deliberate positions for fighting vehicles to protect them from kinetic energy hypervelocity projectiles (for example, the SABOT). See FM 5-103 for position dimensions of the fighting vehicles.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Constructed positions in four parts.</p> <p>NOTE: The commander's plans may have some positions constructed to turret defilade while others are hull defilade.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(a) Constructed a hull defilade.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(b) Constructed a concealed access ramp or route.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(c) Constructed a hide location.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(d) Constructed a turret defilade.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(2) Flattened out or hauled away the spoil.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) Adjusted position depths listed in FM 5-103 for the surrounding terrain; for example, the position depth on a reverse slope will not be as great as on level ground. (4) Ensured that the position suited the vehicle's requirements by driving the vehicle into the position at various stages of construction. * 5. The platoon leader submits status reports to the company and maneuver unit according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**TASK:** Disrupt Construction of Vehicle Fighting Positions (5-OPFOR-0020)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate the enemy is constructing vehicle fighting positions within its defensive area. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt the enemy's efforts to establish vehicle fighting positions. 1. Locates the defensive area. 2. Surprises the main body. 3. Penetrates the defensive area with squad-size probes. 4. Inflicts casualties on the unit. 5. Destroys vehicles. 6. Disrupts the unit's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the unit's allotted time).

**ELEMENT:** 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Construct Bunkers and Shelters (05-3-0312)  
(FM 5-34) (FM 5-103)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is directed to construct bunkers and shelters in the brigade support area. The element has organic hand tools, a backhoe, a bulldozer, a high-mobility engineer escalator (HMEE), a deployable universal combat earthmover (DEUCE), and a crane. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element constructs bunkers and shelters providing protection from the direct or indirect fire and the weather as outlined in Field Manual (FM) 5-103 and fulfilling their functional intent. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The platoon leader coordinates with the commander to determine the type and the location of the bunkers and shelters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used natural shelters such as caves, mines, and tunnels whenever possible.</li> <li>b. Selected the shelter or bunker based on the mission, terrain, available labor, and time factors.</li> </ul> <p>NOTES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If constructed underground, it provides the highest level of protection and requires extensive labor and equipment.</li> <li>2. If constructed as a cut and cover, it requires partial excavation and backfill.</li> <li>3. If constructed above ground, it can be constructed quickly and requires less labor.</li> <li>4. The above ground shelters should only be used in forward areas when they are concealed in the woods, situated on a reverse slope, positioned among other buildings, or the water table is excessively high.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Sited shelters on reverse slopes, in woods, or in a natural defilade (ravines, valleys, wadis, and other hollows or depressions in the terrain) when possible.</li> <li>d. Prepared construction-time estimates using the man-hours found in FM 5-103.</li> <li>e. Prepared a bill of materials (BOM) using the plans found in FM 5-103.</li> <li>f. Constructed the shelters out of the paths of natural drainage lines.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>2. The platoon constructs the bunkers and shelters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Sloped or ditched the entrance sharply away from the shelter.</li> <li>b. Sloped the floor a minimum of 1 percent toward a grenade sump at the entrance.</li> <li>c. If lights were used inside, hung an entrance cover to block all of the light to the outside.</li> <li>d. Checked the cracks and crevices to maintain light discipline.</li> <li>e. Circulated the air at a rate of 1cubic foot per minute in the bunkers and shelters used by personnel remaining inside for long periods of time. This condition was met when light drapes covering the vents were moved by incoming air. Used the stovepipes, tubes, or hollow logs to enhance the ventilation.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Built two well-camouflaged entrances or exits on large shelters (15 or more personnel). Made the secondary exit more blast resistant than the main exit by constructing it just large enough to crawl through. g. Made the overhead cover deep enough to provide the required level of protection. (1) All the bunkers had 76 centimeters of overhead cover. (2) The container express (CONEX) shelters and the above-ground cavity-wall shelters had 61 centimeters of overhead cover. (3) The steel-framed/fabric-covered shelters had 46 centimeters of overhead cover. (4) The hardened frame/fabric shelters, concrete arch shelters, and metal-pipe arch shelters had 1.2 meters of overhead cover. h. Camouflaged and concealed all of the shelters.  3. The platoon improves the bunkers or shelters as time permits, by adding an additional overhead cover and maintaining the camouflage.  4. The platoon leader reports the construction status mission completion to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK:** Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Disrupt Assembly-Area (AA) Activities (5-OPFOR-0013)

**CONDITION:** Intelligence reports indicate platoon- and company-size enemy units are operating in the opposing forces (OPFOR) area of operations. Enemy units can defend from assembly areas with direct fire, antiarmor weapons, and indirect fire. The enemy has close air support (CAS) and nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) capabilities.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR locates and disrupts the enemy's AA activities. 1. Locates the element's AA. 2. Probes the AA with squad- or team-size elements. 3. Inflicts more than 5 percent casualties on the element. 4. Disrupts the element's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the element's allotted time).

**TASK:** Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Prepare Expedient Fords (05-3-0603)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 3-34.2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives an operation order (OPORD) to construct an expedient ford. The mission statement specifies a site location, traffic density (vehicle types and numbers), and a completion time. Digital units have performed functionality checks of their digital systems and they are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element constructs a ford providing unimpeded passage of the traffic density for which it was designed. Gaps less than or equal to 50 meters are prepared in 1 hour. Gaps more than 50 meters are prepared in 2 hours. Digital units report completion reports and locations of ford sites via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operating picture (COP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The platoon constructs the approaches to the ford. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Constructed the slope approaches no greater than 1:3 for wheeled and 1:2 for tracked vehicles.</li> <li>b. Placed the material removed from the banks to the side and not in the stream.</li> </ul>		
2. The platoon prepares the ford bottom. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Filled the short-deep gaps with rock or gravel.</li> <li>b. Prepared the soft-mud bottoms with tree limbs, brush, or timbers and covered them with rock or coarse gravel.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the width was 6 meters, plus or minus 1 meter.</li> </ul>		
3. The platoon marks the edges of the ford. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that poles were placed 1.5 meters apart across the stream width on both sides of the ford and at least 1.5 meters above the water level.</li> </ul>		
4. The platoon leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Maintain Contact (5-OPFOR-0003)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is engaged with enemy base-defense forces. The enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

**STANDARD:** Maintains enemy contact while the enemy withdraws. 1. Engages the enemy forces decisively. 2. Advances the opposing forces (OPFOR) as the enemy forces withdraw. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties. 4. Captures the members of the enemy force. 5. Captures documents and equipment. 6. Safeguards the captured documents, the equipment, and the personnel.

**TASK:** Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**TASK:** Disrupt a Net Control Station (NCS) (5-OPFOR-0019)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has established a NCS. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

**TASK:** Disrupt an Engineer Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0022)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting an engineer reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts an engineer reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from accomplishing its assigned engineer reconnaissance. 4. Surprises the unit conducting the reconnaissance.

**ELEMENTS:** 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Establish Jobsite Security (05-3-0904.05-R01A)  
(FM 5-10) (FM 5-34) (FM 71-1)  
(FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a tactical mission at an 8-digit grid location. Digital units may receive these orders via digital communications. This task is performed during darkness and daylight and in all weather conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element establishes local security and tenable defensive positions that provide early warning and protection from an enemy attack. The enemy's presence is not a surprise. The only time restraints are those specified in the FRAGO or OPORD. Digital units with operational enhanced reporting means submit reports to higher headquarters (HQ) and update the common operational picture (COP) to maintain situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct a tactical mission at an 8-digit grid location. The element leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a mission analysis.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) If a maneuver force was providing security, the element followed procedures beginning with task step 4 below.</li> <li>(2) If the unit was working alone or in an isolated area, the element leader designated overwatch and reconnaissance/minesweeping teams and followed procedures beginning with task step 2 below.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance.</li> <li>c. Reviewed the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>d. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> </ul> <p>2. The element occupies a stationary overwatch position at the site. The overwatch team leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a covered and concealed position.</li> <li>b. Assigned a sector of observation and fire (refer to Field Manual [FM] 71-1).</li> <li>c. Directed the overwatch team to use all available sights and other visual devices to scan the sector to identify enemy forces.</li> </ul> <p>3. The reconnaissance/minesweeping team secures the site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for a possible enemy ambush at the site.</li> <li>b. Located, marked, and reported any mines or unexploded ordnance (UXO) on the site. The chain of command reported the hazard to explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) personnel for disposal.</li> </ul> <p>4. The unit moves into and occupies the position after the site is clear.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader reconnoiters tentative fighting positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the avenues of approach.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Identified the observation posts (OP) or patrol routes to secure the perimeter.</p> <p>c. Identified the crew-served weapon positions.</p> <p>d. Established the withdrawal routes.</p> <p>e. Dismounted personnel positions.</p> <p>f. Positioned vehicles in covered and concealed positions.</p> <p>g. Established the sectors of fire and general positions for crew-served weapons and vehicles.</p> <p>h. Designated which fighting positions, OPs, or patrols were manned full time. The patrol or OP team moved to an assigned position. The patrol or OP team--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Provided early warning and close-in security.</li> <li>(2) Offered cover and concealment for occupants.</li> <li>(3) Established a concealed route leading to and away from the OP.</li> <li>(4) Operated according to the unit's TACSOP or SOP until relieved.</li> <li>(5) Maintained communications with the command post.</li> </ol> <p>i. Supervised the positioning of the chemical alarm.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Placed the alarm 150 meters upwind from the unit.</li> <li>(2) Ensured that the alarm was within visible site of a position to prevent it from being tampered with by the enemy.</li> <li>(3) Did not place the alarm in a depression.</li> <li>(4) Moved the chemical alarm if the wind shifted.</li> </ol> <p>j. Subordinate leaders designated individual positions.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Designated primary fighting positions.</li> <li>(2) Designated alternate fighting positions.</li> <li>(3) Established sectors of fire for each individual. Ensured that individual range cards and element sector sketches were complete according to the unit's TACSOP or SOP.</li> </ol> <p>NOTE: The unit's TACSOP or SOP should have a set time standard for completion of the range cards and sector sketches.</p> <p>k. Maintained communications with the supported maneuver force and higher HQ.</p> <p>l. Emplaced protective obstacles, if required, based on the five-step risk-management process.</p> <p>NOTE: The unit should establish alert procedures and rehearse the procedures on the site with a 100 percent occupation of position.</p> <p>6. The element begins work.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Kept its individual weapons within close reach.</li> <li>b. Maintained noise and light discipline.</li> <li>c. Maintained camouflage procedures.</li> <li>d. Maintained the directed MOPP level.</li> <li>e. Maintained communications with the supported maneuver force or higher headquarters.</li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
031-503-4002	SUPERVISE UNIT PREPARATION FOR NBC ATTACK	STP 21-24-SMCT
052-192-3050	DIRECT A MINE SWEEPING TEAM	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG
052-194-3500	CONDUCT A PATROL	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat-service-support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK:** Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK:** Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
3 ENGINEER PLT HQ

**TASK:** Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions (05-5-0302)  
(FM 5-34) (FM 5-103)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The crew must construct its own crew-served weapons fighting position using organic equipment. Digital units have performed functionality checks of all systems. The element leader has selected the location, and the platoon leader has approved the location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The crew constructs crew-served weapon fighting positions providing coverage of the sector of fire and final protective line (FPL) and protection from direct and indirect fire. The position does not restrict the operational capability of the weapon system. Digital units submit reports of their locations and positions via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means, updating the common operational picture (COP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The crew constructs a machine-gun position having a primary and secondary sector of fire; reports intermediate status and completion to the squad leader.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Constructed the position so that the gun fires to the front or oblique (firing across the unit's front), with the oblique being the primary sector of fire.</li> <li>b. Dug the position in an inverted T shape with a firing platform in each corner.</li> <li>c. Used the tripod on the side with the primary sector of fire and the bipod with the secondary sector of fire.</li> <li>d. Used the earth removed during the construction of the position to provide frontal and flank protection if it did not interfere with the sectors of fire.</li> <li>e. Ensured that it was high enough to cover both soldiers when they were operating the weapon.</li> <li>f. Shaped the hole so that both the gunner and the assistant gunner could get to the weapon.</li> <li>g. Reduced the weapon's height by digging the tripod platform down as much as possible, yet keeping the weapon traversable across the entire sector of fire.</li> <li>h. Dug a one-soldier fighting position to the flank for the ammunition bearer when there was a three-soldier crew for a machine gun. The crew connected this position to the gun position by digging a crawl trench.</li> <li>i. Dug the hole to armpit depth and sloped the floor outward toward each end of the hole.</li> <li>j. Dug grenade sumps approximately the width and depth of one entrenching tool at both ends of the hole.</li> <li>k. Built the overhead cover 46 centimeters thick over the middle of the position, when possible.</li> <li>l. Improved the position, if time permitted, by adding cover, digging trenches to adjacent positions, and maintaining camouflage.</li> <li>m. Completed the position in 7 man-hours without overhead cover or 12 man-hours with overhead cover.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>2. The crew constructs a machine gun position without a secondary sector of fire; reports intermediate status and completion to the squad leader.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Dug the position in a V shape, with the firing position in the apex of the V.</li> <li>b. Constructed the position following procedures in subtasks 1d to 1k. Completed it in 6 man-hours without overhead cover or 11 man-hours with overhead cover.</li> </ul> <p>3. The crew constructs a 90-millimeter recoilless rifle position; reports intermediate status and completion to the squad leader.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used earth removed during the construction of the position for frontal and flank protection. However, left both the muzzle-blast and backblast areas clear of obstacles to prevent round deflection, fires, and pressure buildup. The backblast area was cleared of highly combustible material to a distance of 5 meters and was either level or sloping down and away from the position.</li> <li>b. Ensured that it was high enough to cover both soldiers if the crew built cover on the flanks.</li> <li>c. Dug the position to armpit depth and sloped the floor down toward each end of the hole.</li> <li>d. Dug grenade sumps approximately the width and depth of an entrenching tool at each end of the hole.</li> <li>e. Ensured that the position width was narrow enough so that the rear of the weapon extended over the rear of the hole when the soldier firing the rifle stood at the front of the position.</li> <li>f. Improved the position, if time permitted, by digging trenches to adjacent positions and maintaining camouflage.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Overhead cover is desired only if it protects the crew when they are not firing the weapon (due to the large backblast).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>g. Completed the position in 6 man-hours.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK:** Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**TASK:** Disrupt a Net Control Station (NCS) (5-OPFOR-0019)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has established a NCS. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

**ELEMENTS:** 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Establish a Company Defensive Position (07-2-0414.05-T01A)  
(FM 7-10) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)  
(FM 24-35-1) (TC 24-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company has received an operation order (OPORD) or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) mission requiring the unit to provide its own security and defense. The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements consisting of as much as a motorized rifle company or airborne equivalent have been active in friendly rear areas. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company completes all preparations for the defense within the time specified by the OPORD. The company is not surprised by the OPFOR, suffers no casualties from friendly fire, and repels the OPFOR attacks. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: The platoons execute the following tasks: Establish Unit Defense, Defend Unit Position, Construct a Protective Obstacle, and Conduct Hasty Minefield Operations, when the company is performing this task.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander develops a defensive plan according to the OPORD or the FRAGO.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established sectors or boundaries for the subordinate elements.</li> <li>b. Assigned battle positions for the company elements.</li> <li>c. Designated the primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.</li> <li>d. Designated the engagement areas (EAs).</li> <li>e. Developed the fire-support (FS) plan, including the target reference points (TRPs) forward, within, and to the rear of the defensive position.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The commander conducts a leader's reconnaissance with key company leaders.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established local security.</li> <li>b. Confirmed or modified his plan.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The leaders survey the terrain to finalize their defensive plans.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the covered and concealed routes to and between all positions.</li> <li>b. Identified all avenues of approach (AAs).</li> <li>c. Identified dead space.</li> <li>d. Requested indirect FS to cover the dead space and the likely AAs.</li> <li>e. Identified locations for the company command post (CP), observation posts (OPs), the supply point, and the company casualty collection point.</li> <li>f. Identified potential landing zones (LZs) that the enemy may use for air assault.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The commander designates unit positions or sectors.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Concentrated fire on the most dangerous and most likely AAs.</li> <li>b. Selected positions with good fields of fire and observation of enemy ground and air forces.</li> <li>c. Provided cover and concealment.</li> <li>d. Permitted adequate dispersion laterally and in-depth.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>5. The company establishes unit security.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established the OPs and the air guards.</li> <li>b. Conducted patrols in areas that could not be observed.</li> <li>c. Emplaced early-warning devices.</li> <li>d. Conducted stand-to procedures according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) or order.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The leaders position key weapons and establish fields of fire.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Oriented the units to provide all-around security.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the weapons covered the most dangerous AAs, EAs, or selected kill zones based on the defensive technique.</li> <li>c. Effected mutual support between elements.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the antiarmor weapons covered the likely armor AAs.</li> <li>e. Registered indirect fire and final protection fires (FPF) on the most dangerous dismounted AAs, where possible.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. The leaders check the position for potential problems.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Walked the positions and adjusted for fields of fire.</li> <li>b. Walked the terrain in front of the positions to determine if personnel accomplished their assigned tasks.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The leaders coordinate with flank elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established responsibility for overlapping enemy AAs.</li> <li>b. Exchanged information on the OP locations, patrols, unit signals, and passage points.</li> <li>c. The commander coordinated a withdrawal plan.</li> </ul> <p>9. The company establishes communications, if available.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used wire as primary communications, if available.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the platoon or company CP had communication with the OPs, higher and subordinate leaders, adjacent units, and FS.</li> <li>c. Conducted periodic communications checks to ensure that all communications equipment was operational.</li> <li>d. Planned and provided for an alternate means of communications.</li> </ul> <p>10. The company emplaces minefields and obstacles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested and received clearance to lay protective minefields.</li> <li>b. Emplaced the mines or obstacles according to the company's obstacle plan and recorded the minefield on the standard minefield form.</li> <li>c. Covered the mines or obstacles by observation and direct and indirect fires.</li> <li>d. Reported the location of the mines or obstacles to all elements, and forwarded the standard minefield record to the next higher command as soon as possible.</li> </ul> <p>11. The company defends against an enemy assault.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Detected and reported enemy contact by the OPs.</li> <li>b. Withdrew the OPs on order or according to the company's SOP.</li> <li>c. Increased the intensity of defensive fires as the enemy elements closed to within range of each individual or weapons system.</li> </ul> <p>*12. The commander or forward observer (FO) defends against an enemy assault.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Called for and engaged the attacking force with indirect fire according to the company's SOP.</li> <li>b. Requested FPF from the supporting indirect-fire units as the enemy neared the final protective line (FPL).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*13. The commander defends against an enemy assault.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated direct-fire engagement of the attacking force according to the unit's SOP.</li> <li>b. Executed the obstacle plan according to the battalion's OPORD or FRAGO.</li> <li>c. Increased the intensity of defensive fires as the enemy elements closed to within range of additional weapons.</li> </ul> <p>14. The company consolidates and reorganizes during lulls in the fighting.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Executed platoon consolidation and reorganization.</li> <li>b. Treated and evacuated casualties.</li> <li>c. Transmitted the status report and requested replacement personnel.</li> <li>d. Requested resupply.</li> <li>e. Replaced damaged barriers and obstacles.</li> <li>f. Restored communication.</li> <li>g. Repositioned the OPs that were withdrawn during the engagement.</li> <li>h. Resumed security and patrolling activities.</li> </ul> <p>15. The company continues to defend.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Forced the enemy to withdraw.</li> <li>b. Disengaged by order of higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>c. Ordered the reposition of platoons to alternate or supplementary positions as needed.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
04-3302.01-0003	Conduct a Reconnaissance	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
04-3306.01-0008	Analyze Terrain	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
071-326-5704	SUPERVISE CONSTRUCTION OF A FIGHTING POSITION	STP 21-24-SMCT
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A)  
 (FM 21-16)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** During combat operations, the unit encounters a UXO hazard. Digital units have functional operating systems, such as the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) providing current situational awareness (SA). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit reacts to the UXO hazard while continuing the mission, without loss of personnel or equipment. Digital units report the locations via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means updating information for the common operational picture (COP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The unit recognizes the UXO hazard. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the UXO by type.</li> <li>b. Identified the UXO by subgroup.</li> <li>c. Observed all safety precautions.</li> </ul> * 2. The element leader takes immediate action for the UXO hazard. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evacuated the area as appropriate.</li> <li>b. Determined the appropriate action.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Avoided the UXO hazard.</li> <li>(2) Instituted protective measures.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> * 3. The element leader designates the element to mark the area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Chose leaders to mark the area.</li> <li>b. Briefed leaders on the area to be marked.</li> </ul> * 4. The element marks the UXO hazard. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Marked all the logical approach routes.</li> <li>b. Ensured the UXO was visible from all markers.</li> </ul> * 5. The unit reports the UXO hazard. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated the UXO spot report.</li> <li>b. Determined the priority based on the current situation.</li> <li>c. Forwarded the report to the next higher headquarters (HQ) by the fastest means available.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
093-403-5010	RECOGNIZE MILITARY EXPLOSIVE ORDNANCE BY TYPE	STP 21-24-SMCT
093-403-5020	TAKE IMMEDIATE ACTION BASED ON CONFIRMATION OF AN EXPLOSIVE HAZARD	STP 21-24-SMCT
093-403-5030	REPORT EXPLOSIVE HAZARD	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Use Passive Air-Defense Measures (44-1-C220.05-T01A)  
 (FM 44-100) (FM 44-64) (FM 44-8)  
 (FM 44-80)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is in a tactical position. Hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) have been operating in the general area. The platoon's weapon control status (WCS) is WEAPONS HOLD. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) do not detect the unit. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 or blackout conditions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader uses passive air-defense measures in a tactical position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used all available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, and dispersion) to hide the personnel and the equipment to limit vulnerability. Air situational awareness (SA) was achieved by the unit's monitoring of the simplified handheld terminal units (SHTUs).</li> <li>b. Covered or shaded any shiny items, particularly windshields and optics.</li> <li>c. Established and rehearsed the air-attack alarms.</li> <li>d. Dispersed vehicles, tents, and supplies to reduce vulnerability to air attack.</li> <li>e. Constructed field fortifications with organic equipment as necessary to protect the personnel and the vulnerable mission-essential equipment.</li> <li>f. Manned observation posts (OPs), daytime or nighttime, to provide warning of approaching aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs).</li> <li>g. Established a listening watch on the air-defense early-warning net, if the equipment was available and operational.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The unit leader uses passive air-defense measures in a convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that all personnel received the convoy commander's briefing.</li> <li>b. Camouflaged the vehicles and the equipment before moving out.</li> <li>c. Selected column interval based on the instructions, the mission, and the terrain.</li> <li>d. Placed crew-served weapons throughout the convoy to cover the avenues of approach (front, rear, and flank).</li> <li>e. Assigned soldiers to air-guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360 degrees.</li> <li>f. Identified threat aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) visually.</li> <li>g. Reported all aircraft actions to the higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>h. Established and rehearsed the air-attack alarms.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit personnel use passive air-defense measures when occupying or displacing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the vehicle interval specified in the movement order.</li> <li>b. Staggered vehicles to avoid linear patterns.</li> <li>c. Assigned air guards to the sectors of search that covered 360 degrees, and maintained the coverage until the convoy completed the movement.</li> <li>d. Identified threat aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) visually.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Reported all aircraft actions to the higher HQ. f. Established the vehicle order of precedence.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Take Active Combined-Arms Air-Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-C221.05-T01A)  
 (FM 44-100) (FM 44-64) (FM 44-8)  
 (FM 44-80)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives early warning of aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) in the area. The unit personnel detect unknown or hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs). The unit is in a tactical position. The weapon control status (WCS) is WEAPONS TIGHT. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit destroys or forces attacking aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) away from friendly positions. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 or blackout conditions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The leaders direct combined-arms air-defense measures against the hostile aerial platforms not attacking a stationary unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the air-attack alarm.</li> <li>b. Organized the unit to defensive positions.</li> <li>c. Ordered a search of the assigned sectors for aerial platforms.</li> <li>d. Identified and reported the presence of aerial platforms in the area and sent priority intelligence requirements (PIR) to the higher headquarters (HQ).</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: When making the decision of whether or not to fire at nonattacking hostile aerial platforms with small arms, take into consideration the assigned mission and the tactical situation. The unit must positively and visually identify aerial platforms prior to engaging with small arms, unless the aircraft is committing a hostile act.</p> <p>DANGER: Munitions cannot distinguish between friend and foe. Review all airspace control measures. You must perform all precautionary measures to ensure that the munitions you fire do not cause injury or death to friendly forces or damage to the allied equipment. Even computerized systems require close observation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Made the engagement decision.</li> <li>f. Engaged the unit in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Expect the firing signature from small arms to disclose the unit's position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>g. Performed all precautionary measures to ensure that no fratricide occurred during the engagement.</li> <li>h. Directed the personnel to reload their weapons following the engagement.</li> <li>i. Sent the PIRs to the higher HQ.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTES:</p> <p>(1) The aim points for the propeller-driven aircraft are the same as for the helicopters.</p> <p>(2) Select the aim points in football field lengths: one football field equals approximately 91 meters.</p> <p>(3) Once the lead distance is estimated, the riflemen and the machine gunners aim and fire their weapons at the aim point until the aircraft has flown past that point. Maintain the aim point, not the lead distance. The weapon should not move once the firing cycle starts.</p> <p>(4) Establish the preselected aim points when the unit is in a static position.</p> <p>(5) Accuracy in relation to target hits is not necessary. Accuracy in relation to the aim point is necessary. Volume fire, a coordinated high-volume of fire that the aircraft has to fly through, will achieve the desired results.</p> <p>TYPE AERIAL PLATFORMS      COURSE      AIM POINT</p> <p>Jet/Cruise Missile      Crossing      Two football fields in front of aerial platform nose</p> <p>Jet/Cruise Missile      Overhead      Two football fields in front of aerial platform nose</p> <p>Jet/Cruise Missile      Directly at you      Slightly above aerial platforms nose</p> <p>Helicopter/UAV      Crossing      One-half football field in front of nose</p> <p>Helicopter/UAV      Directly at you      Slightly above helicopter/UAV body</p> <p>Helicopter/UAV      Hovering      Slightly above helicopter/UAV body</p> <p>    j. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit's position as directed by the unit commander.</p> <p>* 2. The leaders direct small arms air-defense measures against the hostile aerial platforms not attacking a moving target.</p> <p>    a. Gave the air-attack alarm.</p> <p>    b. Dispersed vehicles laterally and in-depth, or had the vehicle operators continue to move the unit.</p> <p>    c. Moved vehicles to covered, concealed positions. All personnel not assigned crew-served weapons dismounted and prepared to engage the aircraft or increased dispersion.</p> <p>    d. Engaged the nonattacking aircraft only as directed.</p> <p>    e. Identified the threat aerial platforms visually.</p> <p>    f. Reported all aerial platforms action to the higher HQ.</p> <p>    g. Prepared the unit to engage on the orders of the senior leader.</p> <p>    h. Engaged the unit (when ordered to do so by the senior leader) in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms.</p> <p>    i. Directed personnel to reload their weapons following the engagement of aircraft.</p> <p>* 3. The leaders direct combined-arms air-defense measures against the aerial platforms attacking a stationary unit.</p> <p>    a. Gave the air-attack alarm.</p> <p>    b. Engaged all available personnel immediately in attacking the aerial platforms per the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP).</p> <p>    c. Directed personnel to reload their weapons following the engagement.</p> <p>    d. Ensured that personnel assigned to observation posts (OPs) continued to scan their assigned sectors.</p> <p>    e. Reported any aircraft action to the higher HQ.</p> <p>    f. Reported any casualties to the higher HQ.</p> <p>    g. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit's position as directed by the tactical situation or the TSOP.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 4. The unit leader, or noncommissioned officers (NCOs), directs small arms air-defense measures during the convoy movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alerted vehicle commanders of an impending attack.</li> <li>b. Dispersed vehicles alternately to the shoulders of the road, or off the road if possible. Turned to covered, concealed positions, if the terrain permitted.</li> <li>c. Maintained vehicle intervals, or increased the interval or dispersion. The vehicle operators used evasive driving techniques.</li> <li>d. Ordered the unit to dismount and take up firing positions.</li> <li>e. Prepared personnel to fire on the orders of the senior individual present or automatically returned fire (per engagement procedures) if an aircraft was attacking.</li> <li>f. Identified the aerial platforms.</li> <li>g. Engaged the unit in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns.</li> <li>h. Directed personnel to reload their weapons following the attack.</li> <li>i. Reported the attack and submitted the PIR to the higher HQ.</li> <li>j. Reported any casualties to the higher HQ.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Perform Risk-Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A)  
 (AR 385-10) (FM 100-5) (FM 25-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is deployed performing its combat mission. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All leaders and soldiers are aware of all potential safety problems inherent in the conduct of the task. The company trains to standard and does not take shortcuts that endanger unit members. All risks taken are necessary to accomplish the training objectives. Appropriate measures are taken to minimize risks. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander identifies the risk or safety hazards.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the operation plan (OPLAN), the fragmentary order (FRAGO), and the operation order (OPORD) for the specified and implied missions (tasks).</li> <li>b. Integrated safety into every phase of the planning process.</li> <li>c. Assessed the risks before issuing a FRAGO when the missions or conditions changed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The leaders evaluate the risk or safety hazards identified in the operation.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Compared the risk to the acceptable level of risk in the commander's intent based on the stated training objective.</li> <li>b. Determined the likelihood of equipment and personnel losses from accidents.</li> <li>c. Described the operation in terms of high-, medium-, or low-risk.</li> <li>d. Prepared courses of action (COAs) that minimized accidental losses.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The commander, or leaders, eliminates or reduces the risk or safety hazards.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Chose a COA that maximized the operation and minimized the risk.</li> <li>b. Developed procedures that reduced the risk or safety hazards.</li> <li>c. Prescribed the safety or protective equipment.</li> <li>d. Briefed the elements prior to all of the operations.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The element carries out the safety procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received safety briefings prior to all of the operations.</li> <li>b. Practiced the safety procedures during all of the mission rehearsals.</li> <li>c. Made on-the-spot safety corrections.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		
<p>NOTES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Safety is a part of realism-- and realism includes building safety into the training so that safe practices, which eliminate accidents, become second nature during war (refer to Field Manual [FM] 25-100).</li> <li>2. Risk: FM 100-5 emphasizes the need for boldness and that commanders must take "risks and tenaciously press soldiers and systems" as an imperative of the Air-Land Battle. However, such an imperative is founded on the premise that protecting the force to the maximum extent possible ensures winning the battle. Formally, risk is an expression of possible loss over a specific period of time or number of operational</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
cycles as defined by the Center for Army Safety.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** RECEIVE AND DISTRIBUTE THROUGHPUT SUPPLIES (05-2-0042)  
 (FM 63-1) (FM 63-2) (FM 63-20)  
 (FM 63-21) (FM 63-3) (FM 63-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is supporting a maneuver force. The maneuver's Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) requests supplies to implement the unit's obstacle plan and arranges for the supplies to be throughput to the task force (TF) area. Digital units have functional digital systems to request CS / CSS supplies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company receives and distributes Class IV and/or Class V (engineer) throughput supplies to sustain platoon operations without impeding the mission accomplishment. Digital units send and receive requests for throughput supplies via FM or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The unit receives throughput supplies.</li> <li>2. The executive officer (XO) or the first sergeant (1SG) determines the supply point and linkup point locations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the location was covered and concealed and convenient to the platoon work sites.</li> <li>b. Identified a linkup point with the supporting combat-service-support (CSS) element. Ensured that the location was easily identifiable and located on or near a main supply route (MSR).</li> <li>c. Designated a guide at the linkup point.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The unit off-loads the supplies.</li> <li>4. The XO or the 1SG plans coordination.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated the material-handling equipment (MHE).</li> <li>b. Coordinated troop labor, if needed.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. The unit loads the supplies on company vehicles or establishes a holding area and a storage site.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated for additional trucks, if needed.</li> <li>b. Designated parking or holding areas that allowed for dispersion, camouflage, cover, concealment, and good access and egress routes.</li> </ol> </li> <li>6. The unit establishes control measures for movement.</li> <li>7. The unit establishes a storage site to protect the supplies from the elements and provide security.</li> <li>8. The unit distributes the supplies using the supply-point distribution or the unit-distribution method.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Supply-point distribution method.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified items needed for the engineer-platoon tasks.</li> <li>(2) Established a pickup schedule.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) Notified the platoons of the time and place of issue. (4) Organized available MHE, if required. (5) Issued supplies. (6) Obtained new requests from the platoons. b. Unit-distribution method. (1) Identified items needed for the engineer-platoon tasks. (2) Established a resupply sequence. (3) Uploaded the supply vehicles using reverse loading. (4) Established a linkup point and time with the platoons. If the platoons were in the battlefield or TF area, coordinated with the battalion or TF S4 for logistics package (LOGPAC) operations. (5) Issued supplies. (6) Obtained new requests from the platoons.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** COORDINATE FOR MEDICAL SERVICES (05-2-0050)  
 (FM 8-10) (FM 8-10-1) (FM 8-10-6)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting continuous tactical operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All leaders know where to receive medical support and know evacuation procedures. Subunits can identify the location of medical facilities and/or services. Medical support is available at all times. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander determines medical-support requirements. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assessed the number and the types of missions assigned and anticipated.</li> <li>b. Considered the size of the element conducting the mission.</li> <li>c. Reviewed the time periods that the missions are to be accomplished.</li> </ul> 2. The operations noncommissioned officer (NCO) requests medical support from the Adjutant (US Army) (S1) and Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3). Includes the following critical information on the request: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the number of medics needed.</li> <li>b. Provided the date and time periods that the medics were needed.</li> <li>c. Identified any special equipment that the medics needed to bring.</li> <li>d. Specified the time and location that the medics would linkup with the unit.</li> </ul> 3. The executive officer (XO) or first sergeant (1SG) coordinates for pick up and assigns medics. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the medics on the mission.</li> <li>b. Assigned the medics to platoons based on the mission.</li> <li>c. Briefed the medics on administration and logistical support, such as mess time, stand-to, and sleep areas.</li> </ul> 4. The XO or the 1SG plans for the treatment and evacuation of casualties. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established sick-call procedures according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>b. Located the medical facilities and the medical supply points in the area of operations (AO).</li> <li>c. Planned treatment operations with the assistance of the medic casualty.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Designated the company casualty collection point.</li> <li>(2) Selected casualty-evacuation routes.</li> <li>(3) Determined the disposition of the casualty's weapon and equipment.</li> <li>(4) Planned for the security of the casualty collection point.</li> <li>(5) Ensured that aid and litter teams were designated by all elements.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Identified and disseminated evacuation procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified medical-evacuation (MEDEVAC) procedures.</li> <li>(2) Determined routes.</li> <li>(3) Identified the vehicle to be used as an ambulance.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(4) Determined the location of medical facilities                      (5) Included information in all operation orders (OPORDs).</p> <p>5. The company personnel and medics administer first aid to wounded personnel and evacuate casualties to the company collection point.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Caused no further injury during evacuation.</li> <li>b. Used poleless or improvised (poncho) litter.</li> <li>c. Employed the one- or two-man carrying method.</li> </ul> <p>6. The 1SG, designated NCO, or medic, affects casualty evacuation from the company collection point to the medical facility.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the nearest medical facility to which the casualty was to be evacuated.</li> <li>b. Contacted the medical facility where the casualty was being transported.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensured the facility could accommodate the casualty.</li> <li>(2) Provided all available medical information regarding the casualty.</li> <li>(3) Requested advice regarding special measures to be taken prior to and during the evacuation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Evacuated nonthreatening injuries by ground ambulance.</li> <li>d. Evacuated life threatening injuries by helicopter, using MEDEVAC procedures as outlined in the company's SOP.</li> <li>e. Caused no further injuries during evacuation.</li> <li>f. Retained all classified materials (signal operation instructions (SOIs), maps, orders, overlays) and weapons in the casualty's custody.</li> </ul> <p>7. The commander notifies the higher headquarters (HQ) of casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided the casualty's name, rank, and medical condition.</li> <li>b. Reported the facility to which the soldier was evacuated.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK:** Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Coordinate for Food-Service Support (05-2-0051)  
 (FM 10-23) (AR 30-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company does not have an organic mess capability. Coordination for food-service support is required. The unit is conducting continuous tactical operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit coordinates for three nutritious meals daily for all assigned and attached soldiers. Soldiers do not miss meals because of coordination lapses. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The company commander or food-service officer (FSO) determines the daily feeding plan.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined personnel strength, including attached and supporting personnel.</li> <li>b. Identified locations and times for meals. Developed a distribution plan to support the mission.</li> <li>c. Considered consolidation of subunits.</li> <li>d. Determined the type of rations based on mission constraints, that is A-, T- or meal, ready-to-eat (MRE) rations.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The company commander or FSO requests and coordinates for meals as required.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared a feeding report and forwarded the report to the brigade Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP).                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified the nature of the requirement.</li> <li>(2) Established the date the meals were required.</li> <li>(3) Determined the total number of meals required.</li> <li>(4) Established the time of pick up or delivery of the meals.</li> <li>(5) Determined the location of the units needing delivery.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Informed the brigade S4 of any changes that would affect the operation. Maintained a tolerance of plus or minus 5 percent of the total head count for hot meals.</li> <li>c. Coordinated the times and locations for pick up or delivery.</li> <li>c. Submitted requests for hot meals at least 8 hours prior to the meal, if possible.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The FSO supervises Class I operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Followed the company's standing operating procedure (SOP) for the tactical feeding plan.</li> <li>b. Served the hot meals as soon after pickup or delivery as possible.</li> <li>c. Set up a one-way staggered serving line (one line on each side of the central distribution site) if in danger of being attacked.</li> <li>c. Ensured that all soldiers had their mess kits available, if used.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Set up a one-way straight serving line (one line on each side of the central distribution site) if attack was unlikely.</p> <p>e. Dispersed the serving line in 5-meter (17-foot) intervals to reduce casualty potential.</p> <p>f. Ensured that soldiers dispersed while eating to prevent mass casualties from an enemy attack.</p> <p>g. Established washing facilities.</p> <p>h. Disposed of all trash/garbage properly.</p> <p>4. The company commander ensures that proper field sanitation measures are followed.</p> <p>5. The FSO ensures that proper signature head-count and cash-collection procedures are used during the tactical operation.</p> <p>NOTE: One-line entries may be authorized during training in the field where the collection of signatures is impractical as determined by the company commander or FSO (for example, limited feeding time, troop dispersion, or weather conditions).</p> <p>6. The company commander ensures that the food containers are promptly returned and all trash/garbage is properly disposed of.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat-service-support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK:** Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK:** Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Repair Existing Airfields (05-2-0702)  
 (FM 5-430-00-1) (FM 5-34) (FM 5-430-00-2)  
 (FM 5-436)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company receives a mission to repair an existing airfield for a medium-lift aircraft classification (C-130 aircraft) in the forward area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The airfield is capable of receiving and launching C-130-type aircraft. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander prepares an operation order (OPORD). In addition, coordinates with the battalion for construction equipment (especially a grader and roller), tools, and materials.</p> <p>2. The company commander ensures that the company establishes jobsite security.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the level of security for the site and ensured that the company--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Followed the procedures beginning with subtask 2b, if the engineer company is working alone or in an isolated area.</li> <li>(2) Followed the procedures beginning with subtask 2d, if a maneuver force is providing security.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Ensured that the company occupied an overwatch position of the site and--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Covered and concealed the position.</li> <li>(2) Guarded the site from the overwatch position.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Ensured that a reconnaissance or minesweeping team secured the site and--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Checked for a possible enemy ambush at the site.</li> <li>(2) Found and destroyed any mines on the site.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Ensured that the company moved in and occupied the position after the area was clear and leaders--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Reconnoitered tentative fighting positions.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Stopped vehicles in covered and concealed positions.</li> <li>(b) Dismounted.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Designated sectors and general locations for the vehicles and crew-served weapons.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>3. The company repairs the airfield.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the landing strip longitudinal slope was no greater than 3 percent.</li> <li>b. Repaired ruts and potholes.</li> <li>c. Freed the landing strip of standing water. Repaired muddy spots by replacing the unsuitable subgrade material.</li> <li>d. Cleared the ditches and culverts of debris, such as branches, leaves, trash, and rocks.</li> <li>e. Repaired drainage structures, as required.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: This method is applicable only to drainage areas of 100 acres or less. Use the hasty method if the area contains an active stream.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Determined the runoff using the field estimate <math>Q = 2 AR C</math> method where-- <math>Q</math> = total runoff in cubic feet per second (cfs), <math>A</math> = drainage area in acres, <math>R</math> = rainfall intensity, and <math>C</math> = coefficient factor.</li> <li>(2) Determined the culvert size and the number of pipes from available resources.</li> <li>(3) Repaired the upstream headwall using sandbags, timber, or rock.</li> <li>(4) Ensured that the culvert extended downstream a minimum of 61 centimeters beyond the toe of the slope.</li> <li>f. Freed the landing strip, the taxiway, and the apron of debris that could cause aircraft engine damage.</li> <li>g. Freed the landing strip, the taxiway, and the apron of ice and snow.</li> <li>h. Maintained and repaired the airfield membrane and matting according to Field Manual (FM) 5-430-00-1.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The company commander submits status reports to the battalion according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat-service-support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK:** Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK:** Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Disrupt Enemy Movement and Operations using Persistent and Nonpersistent Chemical Weapons (5-OPFOR-0015)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft along selected supply routes and key bases in the rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts enemy movement and operations using persistent and nonpersistent chemical weapons. 1. Delivers chemical agents in low and/or dense wooded areas. 2. Delays the movement of enemy supplies and equipment to the forward areas. 3. Restricts the movement of the enemy units in the rear area. 4. Channels the movement of enemy units into predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminates enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflicts a high rate of casualties on enemy forces.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT ADMINISTRATIVE OPERATIONS (05-2-1007)  
 (FM 12-6) (FM 21-10)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A company is operating in a tactical environment with replacement personnel arriving. The company's headquarters has all assigned personnel; equipment; and required forms, manuals, and standing operating procedures (SOPs). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company integrates the replacement personnel. The company prepares and submits personnel reports and actions while sustaining operations and providing for the discipline, the health, the welfare, and the morale of all assigned personnel. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP)4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander integrates the replacement personnel and assigns them to subordinate elements within the company. The company commander--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Oriented the replacement personnel before their assignment.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified the unit's mission and the current situation.</li> <li>(2) Explained the chain-of-command procedures.</li> <li>(3) Explained the warning-system, safety, and security procedures.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Assigned the replacement personnel on a priority basis.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. The company personnel prepare the personnel daily summary (PDS). The company personnel--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Combined and consolidated the subordinate-element data.</li> <li>b. Prepared the PDS.</li> <li>c. Submitted the PDS to the battalion Personnel and Administration Center (PAC).</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The company personnel process Department of the Army (DA) Forms 1155 and 1156. The company personnel--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Posted and maintained the unit's casualty record.</li> <li>b. Posted and maintained DA Form 1156.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The company leaders in the chain of command review and verify the completed DA 1155s, and submit the reports to the battalion PAC.</li> <li>* 5. The company leaders initiate actions to request awards or promotions.</li> <li>* 6. The company leaders coordinate individual requests for administrative actions requiring approval from higher headquarters. The company leaders--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Adhered to the local battalion PAC policies.</li> <li>b. Relayed all duty status and other actions to the battalion PAC for processing.</li> <li>c. Coordinated all finance actions through the battalion PAC and the finance office.</li> <li>d. Approved or disapproved personal administrative actions (pass, leave, and emergency leave).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 7. The company leaders initiate judicial and nonjudicial punishment actions. The company leaders--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Drafted a summary of the incident or the violation.</li> <li>b. Obtained and assembled investigation reports and witness statements.</li> <li>c. Reviewed the incident or the violation to determine the best course of action.</li> <li>d. Administered nonjudicial punishment.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The company leader monitors personal hygiene and field-sanitation procedures. The company leaders--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the means were available for obtaining assistance (according to the SOP).</li> <li>b. Coordinated with the higher headquarters for morale and personnel support.</li> </ul> <p>* 9. The company commander initiates DA Form 67-8.</p> <p>*10. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant initiates DA Forms 2166-7-1 and 2166-7. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Drafted the work sheets for the Noncommissioned Officer (NCO) Checklist/Record and the Noncommissioned Officer Evaluation Report (NCOER).</li> <li>b. Forwarded the draft work sheets to the battalion PAC.</li> <li>c. Maintained the appropriate privacy measures during all stages of the process.</li> </ul> <p>*11. The company leaders coordinate the medical and dental treatment of all assigned personnel (for nonbattle injuries). The company leaders--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the procedures for medical and dental assistance were coordinated with higher headquarters.</li> <li>b. Adhered to the medical or dental evaluation of the medical or dental authority.</li> </ul> <p>*12. The company leaders coordinate for chaplain assistance. The company leaders--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated the presentation of the religious services.</li> <li>b. Advised personnel on how to obtain chaplain assistance.</li> </ul> <p>*13. The company leaders coordinate for Red Cross assistance. The company leaders--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Advised personnel on how to obtain Red Cross assistance.</li> <li>b. Recommended personnel for Red Cross assistance.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
03-0001.00-1011	Recommend Enlisted Personnel for Promotion	STP 21-II-MQS
03-0150.00-1003	Recommend Enlisted Personnel for Reduction for Inefficiency or Misconduct	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
03-0170.01-1005	Perform Wartime Strength Accounting at Unit Level	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Conduct Combat Refueling Operations (05-2-1024)  
 (FM 10-67-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A unit is conducting refueling operations. The unit to be refueled has selected and secured a refueling area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit refuels the vehicles without affecting ongoing operations. The time required to conduct this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The executive officer (XO) or the first sergeant (1SG) organizes a refueling operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the next higher supply activity for a bulk-fuel supply, according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>b. Established a refueling schedule for engineer equipment (high-consumption vehicles). Modified the schedule, as needed, to ensure that the company accomplished critical missions.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with supporting units for additional refueling support, as needed.</li> <li>d. Selected a refueling point centralized to the work sites. The refueling point had good cover or concealment locations and good entrance and exit routes.</li> </ul> <p>2. Refueling personnel support the unit according to the established schedule.</p> <p>3. Refueling personnel establish the fuel point.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Grounded the fuel truck using the procedures specified in the appropriate technical manual (TM).</li> <li>b. Positioned fire extinguishers in a readily available location.</li> <li>c. Established traffic-control patterns to minimize congestion.</li> </ul> <p>4. Company personnel conduct the refueling operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Turned off the vehicle's engines.</li> <li>b. Grounded the fuel truck to the refueling vehicle.</li> <li>c. Issued packaged petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL) items, as needed.</li> <li>d. Maintained dispersion, basing the spacing on the terrain; at a minimum, maintained spacing of 50 meters.</li> <li>e. Maintained noise and light discipline.</li> <li>f. Observed safety procedures.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The XO or the 1SG coordinates for bulk refueling for the fuel truck.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the location of the bulk refueling point.</li> <li>b. Coordinated for additional bulk refueling, if needed.</li> <li>c. Restocked onboard packaged POL items.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. Company leaders monitor the refueling process.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 7. The XO or the 1SG updates the fuel forecast with the battalion task force (TF) Supply Officer (US Army) (S4).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** COORDINATE FOR ORGANIZATIONAL MAINTENANCE SUPPORT (05-2-1126)  
 (DA PAM 738-750) (AR 725-50) (AR 750-43)  
 (FM 9-43-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A company is performing continuous tactical operations in support of a maneuver force. The absence of maintenance capabilities requires the unit to coordinate for organizational maintenance support in order to sustain the unit's equipment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The commander or his designated representative coordinates for and receives organizational maintenance support necessary to support continuous operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP)4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander identifies the need for organizational maintenance support. The company commander--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed the requests from the subordinate elements and key leaders.</li> <li>b. Determined if the equipment needed to be serviced, recovered, repaired, or evacuated to the unit maintenance collection point (UMCP).</li> <li>c. Determined what repair parts or services were needed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The company commander reviews the operation order (OPORD) and determines whether the supported unit or the battalion will provide support.</li> <li>* 3. The company commander or the maintenance officer requests support. The company commander or the maintenance officer--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included the following information in the request:                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The location of the equipment and the routes to the site.</li> <li>(2) The extent of the damage or the type of service required.</li> <li>(3) The parts needed to repair the equipment (if known).</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Submitted the request within one hour of notification that the equipment was nonmission capable.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The company personnel supports and assists the maintenance team in the repair or evacuation of equipment. The company personnel--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided personnel support as needed.</li> <li>b. Provided logistical support to include rations; petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL) products; and power-generation equipment (if available).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. The company maintenance officer provides an equipment status and condition report to the supporting unit. The company maintenance officer--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used Department of the Army (DA) Form 2406.</li> <li>b. Provided the reports as specified in the OPORD or the standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 6. The company commander or his designated representative coordinates with the supporting maintenance activity for the pickup of non-mission capable supply (NMCS) or maintenance equipment. The company commander or his designated representative-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the vehicles to ensure that the repairs were completed and that the equipment was mission capable.</li> <li>b. Submitted an updated status report to higher headquarters.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Establish Unit Maintenance Operations (05-2-1131)  
 (FM 9-43-1) (DA PAM 738-750) (FM 20-3)  
 (FM 63-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A company has relocated, and unit's maintenance operations must be established. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Maintenance facilities are established. The maintenance section is equipped to repair and recover the unit's vehicles in time to support ongoing operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The maintenance officer or the motor sergeant selects a maintenance site. 2. Maintenance personnel prepare the maintenance site. a. Checked the area for mines, booby traps, and trip flares. b. Established security procedures (including checkpoints) to ensure that only authorized personnel entered the area. c. Designed the layout for the control, management, and support of maintenance operations. d. Designed a one-way traffic pattern in and out of the area. 3. Maintenance personnel establish the unit maintenance facility. a. Camouflaged the vehicles and equipment. b. Established communications. c. Erected maintenance tents and medium general-purpose tents. d. Installed lighting sets. e. Positioned power generators to reduce the noise and the fire hazards. f. Parked the vehicles facing the exits. g. Maintained noise and light discipline in the maintenance area. h. Ensured that the vehicles were dispersed properly and secured at all times. i. Provided accessible fire points and alarms. j. Prepared petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL) storage facilities. Disposed of the contaminated POL products according to the procedures directed by higher headquarters (HQ). k. Ensured that maintenance publications were current and available.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Plan/Direct Aerial Logistics Operations (05-3-1054)  
 (FM 90-4) (FM 1-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company has been conducting combat operations in support of a maneuver infantry battalion. The unit needs additional supplies and material to sustain combat operations and provide continuous support to the maneuver elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company staff determines logistical support necessary to sustain operations and is prepared to receive aerial resupply at the time and location specified. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company staff (commander, executive officer (XO), first sergeant (1SG), supply sergeant) determines logistical support necessary to sustain operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed current and future missions with input from key noncommissioned officers (NCOs) and leaders and determined anticipated ammunition, supply, and material requirements.</li> <li>b. Determined the type and quantity of supplies to be requested.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Compared requirements with existing inventories.</li> <li>(2) Considered the resupply timetable.</li> <li>(3) Reviewed logistic status (LOGSTAT) reports and supply requests.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 2. The commander selects the drop zone (DZ)/landing zone (LZ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the location was near the unit command post (CP) and was defensible.</li> <li>b. Ensured that landing aircraft would not pose additional risk to the helicopter or crew.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the location was secure from enemy direct and indirect fire.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the supplies could be transported by personnel and/or equipment away from the site quickly.</li> <li>e. Ensured that the DZ/LZ was large enough to accommodate incoming aircraft and supplies.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) 35 meters in diameter during the daytime and 50 meters in diameter during the night time for observation helicopters (OHs) and utility helicopters (UHs).</li> <li>(2) 100 meters long and 35 meters wide during the daytime and 150 meters long and 100 meters wide during the night for cargo helicopter (CH).</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>3. The commander designates a reconnaissance element to conduct a reconnaissance of the selected LZ, if the resupply aircraft must land or the loads are externally rigged, and ensures that it meets the following criteria (based on factors of the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian consideration (METT-TC):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified that the DZ/LZ could accommodate resupply with minimal effort.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the DZ/LZ met the following criteria:</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Ensured that the area was large enough to allow the aircraft to maneuver (LZ only).</p> <p>(2) Ensured that it could be easily identified from the air.</p> <p>(3) Secured from enemy direct and indirect fire.</p> <p>(4) Secured by a company-size element.</p> <p>(5) Located to the unit's location, objective, or route.</p> <p>(6) Ensured that the surface was firm enough to support the weight of the resupply aircraft (LZ only).</p> <p>(7) Freed of tree stumps or other objects that could puncture the bottom of the aircraft or damage sling-loaded cargo. Marked items that could not be removed with panel markers, red lights, or other field expedient markers.</p> <p>(8) Ensured that the LZ was free of loose debris that could damage aircraft engines.</p> <p>(9) Ensured that the ground slope was less than 8 degrees (LZ only).</p> <p>(10) Ensured that the approach and departure ends of the LZ were free of tall trees, telephone lines, power lines, or similar obstacles that could interfere with aircraft landings or liftoffs. An obstacle ratio of 10 to 1 was used; that is, a landing point required 100 feet of horizontal clearance from a 10-foot-tall tree if the aircraft must approach or depart directly over the tree.</p> <p>c. Determined the amount of engineer assets required to prepare the LZ/DZ.</p> <p>d. Coordinated with the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army (S3) for indirect fire support at the LZ/DZ if needed.</p> <p>4. The XO requests aerial resupply.</p> <p>a. Prepared the request with the following information:</p> <p>(1) Delivery time.</p> <p>(2) Location of the DZ/LZ.</p> <p>(3) Desired method (airdropped or air landed).</p> <p>(4) Type and quantity of supplies.</p> <p>b. Submitted the request to the battalion Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) section.</p> <p>5. The company commander organizes the company to receive aerial supply.</p> <p>a. Designated elements to secure the LZ or DZ.</p> <p>b. Designated a recovery and distribution element.</p> <p>6. The company security element secures the LZ or DZ.</p> <p>a. Searched the area to ensure that it was free of the enemy.</p> <p>b. Established mutually supporting positions that provided observation, cover, concealment, fields of fire, and cover for the most likely mounted and dismounted avenues of approach to the LZ or DZ.</p> <p>c. Ensured that the positions were far enough out to provide early warning of enemy actions.</p> <p>d. Employed hasty obstacles, as required (for example, claymore mines and roadblocks).</p> <p>7. The company commander--</p> <p>a. Identified the operational area to the platoon leader in charge of the recovery and distribution element.</p> <p>b. Identified the load impact or helicopter landing point.</p> <p>c. Identified a distribution point for the supplies.</p> <p>8. The company prepares the LZ or DZ, after the area has been secured.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Removed all obstacles, if possible, and marked those which could not be easily seen during the day. The company used red panels or other easily seen objects over the obstruction during daylight; used red lights at night.</p> <p>b. Removed loose debris at the LZ which could have damaged rotor blades or aircraft engines.</p> <p>c. Marked the load impact area or helicopter landing point in a manner identified by the commander (for example, smoke, lights, VS-17 panels, field expedient markers).</p> <p>9. The company recovery and distribution team receives the supplies immediately on delivery.</p> <p>a. Moved quickly to the aircraft or airdropped load.</p> <p>b. Unloaded the aircraft, divided the load (if required), and moved it to the distribution point.</p> <p>c. Concealed the LZ or DZ by removing any items that could have identified its use for resupply, such as recovering markers, covering aircraft tracks, and removing rigging material and equipment.</p> <p>*10. The company commander controls the breakdown of the supplies at the distribution point according to the allocation plan.</p> <p>a. Ensured that supplies were distributed tactically.</p> <p>b. Ensured that security was maintained throughout the operation.</p> <p>c. Ensured that the unit continued its mission.</p> <p>*11. The commander reports receipt of the supplies to higher headquarters (HQs) on completion of the delivery operation and disposes of the salvaged containers, parachutes, cargo nets, and pallets according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat-service-support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK:** Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Transport Casualties (for Units without Medical Treatment Personnel) (08-2-C316.05-T01A)  
 (FM 8-10-6) (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10)  
 (FM 57-38)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Unit personnel are wounded and some may be chemically contaminated. The unit has no organic medical treatment personnel. Threat force contact has been broken. Unit defenses have been reorganized. Casualties are transported from defensive positions to designated casualty collection points. All methods of transport are employed. Some wounded enemy prisoner of war (EPW) casualties may require transport. This task is performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. The tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) and higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) are available. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Casualties are transported as soon as the tactical situation permits according to the TSOP, OPORD, provisions of the Geneva Convention, and Field Manual (FM) 8-10-6. At mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4, performance degradation factors increase the time required to transport casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander and leaders supervise the transport of casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored casualty transport operations for compliance with FM 8-10-6 and the TSOP.</li> <li>b. Identified casualty collection points.</li> <li>c. Identified transport requirements.</li> <li>d. Supervised the preparation of casualties for transport.</li> <li>e. Coordinated the transport of casualties from the unit area with higher HQ personnel element according to FM 8-10-6 and the TSOP.</li> <li>f. Coordinated security requirements for the pick-up site with subelements and higher HQ operations element.</li> <li>g. Disseminated transport information to unit personnel.</li> <li>h. Forwarded the casualty feeder report and witness statements to higher HQ personnel element according to FM 12-6 and the TSOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. Unit personnel prepare casualties for transport.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided first aid treatment to casualties.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: See task 08-2-0003 for detailed treatment procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Reported casualties, as required.</li> <li>c. Collected classified documents such as the signal operation instructions (SOI) and standing signal instructions (SSI), maps, overlays, and key lists.</li> <li>d. Secured the custody of organizational equipment according to the TSOP.</li> <li>e. Forwarded casualty feeder reports to unit HQ according to the TSOP.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using manual carries.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected the type of manual carry appropriate to the situation and injury.</li> <li>b. Transported the casualty without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. Unit personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using litter carries.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified litter teams.</li> <li>b. Constructed an improvised litter from available material, as required.</li> <li>c. Secured the casualty on the litter.</li> <li>d. Transported the casualty without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</li> </ol> <p>5. Unit personnel transport casualties to a medical treatment facility (MTF) using available vehicles.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Loaded the maximum number of casualties according to FM 8-10-6.</li> <li>b. Secured casualties in the vehicle.</li> <li>c. Transported casualties without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</li> </ol> <p>* 6. The commander and leaders request aeromedical evacuation.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Transmitted the request according to FM 8-10-6, the OPOD, and the TSOP.</li> <li>b. Selected the landing site (which provides sufficient space for helicopter hover, landing, and take-off) according to FM 8-10-6 and FM 57-38.</li> <li>c. Supervised the removal of all dangerous objects likely to be blown about prior to aircraft arrival.</li> <li>d. Supervised the security of the landing site according to the TSOP.</li> <li>e. Ensured the landing zone (LZ) is appropriately marked (light sets, smoke, and so forth) according to the TSOP, if required.</li> </ol> <p>7. Unit personnel assist in loading ambulance.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employed the proper carrying and loading techniques according to FM 8-10-6.</li> <li>b. Loaded casualties in the sequence directed by the crew.</li> <li>c. Loaded casualties without causing unnecessary discomfort.</li> <li>d. Employed safety procedures according to Army Regulation (AR) 385-10, FM 8-10-6, and the TSOP.</li> <li>e. Employed environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TSOP.</li> </ol> <p>8. Unit personnel transport chemically contaminated casualties.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed MOPP 4.</li> <li>b. Marked contaminated casualties according to the TSOP.</li> <li>c. Notified the supporting MTF that contaminated casualties are en route to their location.</li> <li>d. Transported casualties directly to a designated decontamination and treatment station.</li> <li>e. Protected casualties from further contamination during transport.</li> </ol> <p>9. Unit personnel transport EPW casualties.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained security of EPW casualties according to the TSOP.</li> <li>b. Searched EPW casualties for weapons and ordnance prior to transport.</li> <li>c. Transported EPW casualties according to the provisions of the Geneva Convention and the TSOP.</li> </ol>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Conduct Battlefield Stress-Reduction and Stress-Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.05-T01A)  
 (FM 22-51)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Combat-health-support (CHS) operations have commenced. Unit personnel are deployed in support of higher headquarters (HQ) operations. The unit's sleep plan and the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) to manage battle fatigue (BF) soldiers have been developed. Personnel have been cross-trained on critical tasks. Operations are continuous over a prolonged period of time causing stressful situations for personnel. The commander has directed that battlefield stress-management procedures be implemented. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available.

**NOTE:** Due to the technical knowledge and skills required to perform some military occupational specialty (MOS)-specific tasks, caution must be exercised when cross-training personnel. For instance, nonmedical personnel cannot be cross-trained to perform MOS-specific medical tasks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit applies techniques that counter battlefield stress. At mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4, performance degradation factors increase the need for stress-prevention implementation. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander and leaders perform stress-prevention leader actions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued warning orders, operation orders (OPORDs), and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level.</li> <li>b. Provided soldiers with an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situation.</li> <li>c. Briefed the leader's intention to all unit personnel.</li> <li>d. Spoke positively concerning the unit's missions, purpose, and abilities.</li> <li>e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit.</li> <li>f. Instituted an information-dissemination plan designed to quell and prevent rumors.</li> <li>g. Informed personnel of the availability of religious support.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The commander and leaders implement the sleep plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided a safe and secure area away from vehicles and other high-noise activities.</li> <li>b. Adjusted the sleep plan as dictated by the tactical situation.</li> <li>c. Enforced the sleep plan according to the TSOP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The leaders implement task rotation or restructuring procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alternated cross-trained unit personnel on critical tasks, as required.</li> <li>b. Rotated unit personnel between demanding and nondemanding tasks.</li> <li>c. Assigned two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy.</li> <li>d. Adjusted task rotation policies and procedures to the tactical situation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The leaders implement stress-coping and stress-management techniques.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Integrated new unit members into the unit immediately.</li> <li>b. Assisted soldiers in resolving home-front problems.</li> <li>c. Implemented a buddy system to observe signs of stress or BF among soldiers and leaders.</li> <li>d. Provided instruction on relaxation techniques to all personnel prior to deployment.</li> <li>e. Conducted after-action debriefings.</li> <li>f. Scheduled a critical-event debriefing after any especially traumatic event according to FM 22-51.</li> <li>g. Conducted unit award, decoration, recognition, and memorial ceremonies.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The commander and leaders implement stress-control techniques.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Implemented a plan to deal with mild, seriously stressed, or BF cases.</li> <li>b. Assigned soldiers showing signs of severe stress or BF to simple tasks.</li> <li>c. Directed personnel to be supportive of stressed or BF soldiers.</li> <li>d. Referred soldiers showing signs of serious stress or BF to the supporting medical treatment facility (MTF) for evaluation.</li> <li>e. Reintegrated return-to-duty (RTD) soldiers into their specific element.</li> </ul> <p>6. Unit personnel employ stress-prevention measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained a positive attitude concerning the unit's mission, purpose, and abilities.</li> <li>b. Complied with the commander's sleep plan.</li> <li>c. Identified other soldiers with signs of stress or BF.</li> <li>d. Provided immediate buddy-aid support.</li> <li>e. Reported signs of stress or BF in other soldiers to their immediate supervisor.</li> <li>f. Accepted new unit members immediately.</li> <li>g. Practiced relaxation techniques at appropriate times and places.</li> <li>h. Participated in buddy systems and after-action debriefings.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Perform Field-Sanitation Functions (08-2-R315.05-T01A)  
 (FM 21-10) (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10)  
 (AR 40-5) (FM 21-10-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Health hazards exist, which require field-sanitation measures. The unit is in the field without permanent sanitation or water facilities. The commander has selected and trained the unit's field-sanitation team (FST). The combat health support (CHS) plan, the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP), and higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) are available. All required sanitation equipment is available. Field-sanitation measures are continuous and are performed simultaneously with other operational tasks. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Field-sanitation measures are accomplished according to the TSOP, the OPORD, and Field Manual (FM) 21-10. The FST performs field-sanitation measures according to the TSOP, FM 21-10, FM 21-10-1, and the commander's guidance. At mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4, only minimum-essential field-sanitation activities are performed.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander directs field-sanitation measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed field-sanitation activities to counter the medical threat.</li> <li>b. Monitored field-sanitation activities for compliance with FM 21-10, FM 21-10-1, and the TSOP.</li> <li>c. Enforced individual field-sanitation measures.</li> <li>d. Requested assistance from the supporting preventive medicine (PVNTMED) element for sanitation problems that were beyond the expertise of the unit's FST according to the TSOP and the OPORD.</li> <li>e. Corrected field-sanitation deficiencies.</li> <li>f. Reported field-sanitation deficiencies that could not be corrected by unit personnel to the FST.</li> <li>g. Enforced safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TSOP.</li> <li>h. Enforced environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TSOP.</li> </ul> 2. The FST supervises unit field-sanitation measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained field-sanitation basic load according to AR 40-5 and FM 21-10-1.</li> <li>b. Supervised the distribution of field-sanitation basic load items according to AR 40-5 and FM 21-10-1.</li> <li>c. Tested the unit's water supply for required chlorine residual level according to FM 21-10-1 and the TSOP.</li> <li>d. Inspected the water containers and trailers according to FM 21-10-1 and the TSOP.</li> <li>e. Monitored personnel to ensure that they used personal protective measures against arthropods (skin, clothing, and bed-net repellent) and rodents according to applicable directives and the commander's guidance.</li> <li>f. Conducted rodent surveys, as required.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>g. Monitored personnel for employment of correct hygiene measures.</li> <li>h. Monitored waste facilities and procedures for compliance with AR 40-5, FM 21-10-1, and the TSOP, as required.</li> <li>i. Inspected latrines and urinals according to FM 21-10-1 and the TSOP.</li> <li>j. Inspected liquid and solid waste-disposal facilities to ensure their compliance with AR 40-5, FM 21-10-1, and the TSOP.</li> <li>k. Inspected hand-washing devices according to FM 21-10-1 and the TSOP.</li> <li>l. Inspected the transport, storage, preparation, and service of food for compliance with FM 21-10-1 and the TSOP.</li> <li>m. Provided advice, recommendations, and training requirements to the commander.</li> <li>n. Enforced safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TSOP.</li> <li>o. Enforced environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TSOP.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit personnel employ field-sanitation measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the prescribed load of water purification materials according to AR 40-5, FM 21-10, and the TSOP.</li> <li>b. Prepared nonpotable water for personal use according to FM 21-10 and the TSOP.</li> <li>c. Consumed only water designated as potable.</li> <li>d. Maintained latrines and hand-washing facilities according to FM 21-10 and the TSOP.</li> <li>e. Employed preventive measures against cold and heat injuries.</li> <li>f. Employed personal-hygiene measures.</li> <li>g. Employed preventive measures against arthropod and rodent infestation, to include using skin, clothing, and bed-net repellent.</li> <li>h. Reported field-sanitation deficiencies to the FST.</li> <li>i. Employed safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TSOP.</li> <li>j. Employed environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TSOP.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations (10-2-0318.05-T01A)  
 (FM 10-64) (AR 638-30) (FM 3-4)  
 (FM 3-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company has sustained fatalities. The tactical situation permits GRREG operations to be performed. Some remains may be contaminated. The tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) is available. There are no GRREG personnel available; nonmortuary affairs personnel perform the task. The theater commander has authorized emergency burials.

**NOTE:** Only those tasks deemed mission-essential by the commander are performed in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company either recovers the killed in action (KIA) and evacuates them to a designated mortuary-affair collection point or performs an emergency burial. Personal possessions are not lost. Locations of the emergency graves are recorded and reported to higher headquarters (HQ). These activities are curtailed in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4. The time required to conduct this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander designates a search-and-recovery team.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a team leader.</li> <li>b. Issued guidance.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The search-and-recovery team leader prepares for the search.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed a map or an aerial reconnaissance of the search area.</li> <li>b. Identified additional support requirements.</li> <li>c. Requested additional support requirements from higher HQ.</li> <li>d. Identified the search pattern to be used.</li> <li>e. Coordinated nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) and explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) assistance with higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Coordinated area security with higher HQ.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The search-and-recovery team leader supervises the search-and-recovery and the evacuation operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the search-and-recovery team on the operational procedures.</li> <li>b. Issued personal effects bags, human remains pouches, if available, and NBC-agent tags.</li> <li>c. Assigned the search area.</li> <li>d. Monitored the search-and-recovery team operations for compliance with the TSOP and the commander's guidance.</li> <li>e. Coordinated evacuation operations with higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Forwarded the situation report (SITREP) to higher HQ according to the TSOP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The search-and-recovery team conducts the search.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked the area immediately for mines or booby traps.</li> <li>b. Searched the assigned areas for remains and personal effects.</li> <li>c. Marked the terrain location of the remains with pegs.</li> <li>d. Collected all disassociated personal effects.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Recorded the eight-digit grid coordinates of the recovery site.</p> <p>5. The search-and-recovery team recovers remains.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established tentative identification.</li> <li>b. Attached the NBC tag or a tag marked with a large C to the contaminated and contagious remains.</li> <li>c. Attached personal effects to the remains.</li> <li>d. Shrouded the remains with available materials.</li> <li>e. Prepared a recovery-site sketch of the recovery site.</li> <li>f. Prepared a map overlay of the recovery site.</li> </ul> <p>6. The search-and-recovery team evacuates remains.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified that the personal effects were attached to the remains.</li> <li>b. Loaded the remains in ground transportation feet first, in aircraft head first.</li> <li>c. Transported the remains in a covered vehicle or aircraft to a designated mortuary-affair collection point.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. The search-and-recovery team leader supervises emergency burials.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the specific burial site.</li> <li>b. Supervised the marking of the grave site.</li> <li>c. Supervised the burying of all recovered remains and their personal effects.</li> </ul> <p>8. The search-and-recovery team performs emergency burials.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the grave site.</li> <li>b. Placed the remains in the grave.</li> <li>c. Marked all the grave sites.</li> <li>d. Buried the United States, allied, and enemy forces remains with their personal effects in separate grave sites.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Provide Company Supply Support (10-2-0320.05-T01A)  
 (DA PAM 710-2-1) (AR 710-2) (FM 3-4)  
 (FM 3-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company headquarters (HQ) is receiving requests for supplies from subordinate elements. The equipment and supplies are arriving through supply channels, but additional supplies may be required. Extra small arms and ammunition are stored in the supply area. The unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) and the battalion's operation order (OPORD) is available. The supply area has been established and supply support is a continuous task that is performed simultaneously with other support and operational tasks. Digital units have performed functions and connectivity checks, and the system is operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The equipment and supplies are distributed without interfering with mission requirements as established by the TSOP and the OPORD. At mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4, unit supply support is reduced to minimum essential actions. Digital units have the capability to request supply support via digital means and according to the unit TSOP. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander directs unit supply operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the supply records and status to ensure compliance with supply regulations, directives, and the TSOP.</li> <li>b. Directed inventories of the supplies and equipment to calculate assets on hand.</li> <li>c. Inspected the unit's equipment, weapons, and ammunition storage areas for compliance with supply regulations, directives, and the TSOP.</li> <li>d. Directed the issue of supplies and equipment according to the battalion's guidance and the TSOP or both sustainment controls.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The supply sergeant supervises unit supply operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected supply status to determine total assets.</li> <li>b. Conducted inventories to calculate assets on hand.</li> <li>c. Developed the supply storage plans.</li> <li>d. Monitored supply transactions to ensure compliance with established supply procedures.</li> <li>e. Supervised the control of weapons and ammunition.</li> <li>f. Prepared input to the material-condition status reports (MCSR).</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Supply personnel request additional supplies.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated requirements with the elements.</li> <li>b. Calculated resupply requirements.</li> <li>c. Recorded requests on the appropriate document register.</li> <li>d. Forwarded resupply requests to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4).</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. Supply personnel receive supplies.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected incoming supplies for quantity and condition.</li> <li>b. Recorded receipt of supplies on the appropriate document register.</li> <li>c. Stored supplies according to the storage plans.</li> <li>d. Notified the requesting element of the availability of supplies for issue.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. Supply personnel issue supplies. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Processed the supply requests according to appropriate regulations, directives, and the TSOP.</li> <li>b. Prepared the transaction documents according to appropriate regulations, directives, and the TSOP.</li> <li>c. Issued supplies as prescribed in the commander's guidance.</li> <li>d. Maintained prescribed copies of the transactions according to appropriate regulations and directives.</li> </ul> 6. Supply personnel maintain small arms and ammunition. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Controlled stored weapons and ammunition according to appropriate regulations and command policies.</li> <li>b. Requested ammunition resupply from the S4.</li> <li>c. Performed unit-level maintenance on small arms.</li> <li>d. Forwarded weapons beyond organizational repair capabilities to the support maintenance elements.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Install a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT) (11-5-0049.05-T01A)  
 (TC 24-20) (TM 11-5805-262-12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon occupies a defensive position and is directed to establish wire communications. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon installs wire, a switchboard, and telephones to establish and maintain communications with subordinate elements no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Designated personnel install a telephone switchboard (SB).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the SB22/PT for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and Technical Manual (TM) 11-5805-262-12. If the packing list was not available, they used the end-item list to check the components.</li> <li>b. Positioned the telephone SB on a flat surface such as a table, a packing box, or a ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, a shelter half, or a canvas to protect the SB from the elements.</li> <li>c. Laid the SB on its side so the nameplate was up.</li> <li>d. Grounded the equipment according to the grounding techniques specified in TM 11-5805-262-12.</li> <li>e. Performed the SB preoperation procedures according to TM 11-5805-262-12.</li> <li>f. Labeled the SB according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>g. Connected local and trunk wire lines.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Designated personnel install the internal wiring and telephones.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tested the field wire or cable prior to installation.</li> <li>b. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the platoon leader.</li> <li>c. Secured the field wire at starting points and at changes of direction to reduce strain.</li> <li>d. Used proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points.</li> <li>e. Tagged the wire ties.</li> <li>f. Enhanced concealment using the terrain and vegetation.</li> <li>g. Ensured that the overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Designated personnel operate the telephone SB.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tested the SB22/PT by performing communication checks with all users to ensure that the SB was operational.</li> <li>b. Processed calls.</li> <li>c. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the telephone SB according to TM 11-5805-262-12.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. Designated personnel inform the platoon leader when wire communications are established.  5. Performs PMCS on the field wire or cable lines. a. Maintained a 20-percent slack in the field wire or cable lines. b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT) (11-5-0050.05-T01A)  
 (TC 24-20) (TM 11-5805-262-12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon occupies a defensive position and is directed to establish wire communications. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon installs wire, a switchboard (SB), and telephones to establish and maintain communications with subordinate elements no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Designated personnel operate a telephone SB.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the SB22/PT for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and Technical Manual (TM) 11-5805-262-12. If the packing list was not available, used the end-item list to check the components.</li> <li>b. Positioned the telephone SB on a flat surface such as a table, a packing box, or a ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, a shelter half, or a canvas to protect the SB from the elements.</li> <li>c. Laid the SB on its side so the nameplate was up.</li> <li>d. Grounded the equipment according to the grounding techniques specified in TM 11-5805-262-12.</li> <li>e. Performed the SB preoperation procedures according to TM 11-5805-262-12.</li> <li>f. Labeled the SB according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>g. Connected local and trunk wire lines.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Designated personnel install the internal wiring and telephones.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tested the field wire or cable prior to installation.</li> <li>b. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the platoon leader.</li> <li>c. Secured the field wire at starting points and at changes of direction to reduce strain.</li> <li>d. Used proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points.</li> <li>e. Tagged the wire ties.</li> <li>f. Enhanced concealment using the terrain and vegetation.</li> <li>g. Ensured that the overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Designated personnel operate the telephone SB.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tested the SB22/PT by performing communication checks with all users to ensure that the SB was operational.</li> <li>b. Processed calls.</li> <li>c. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the telephone SB according to TM 11-5805-262-12.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. Designated personnel inform the platoon leader when wire communications are established.  5. Performs PMCS on the field wire or cable lines. a. Maintained a 20-percent slack in the field wire or cable lines. b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Provide a Field Cable or Wire System (11-5-0121.05-T01A)  
 (FM 24-19) (TC 24-20) (TM 11-3895-203-15)  
 (TM 11-5805-262-12) (TM 11-5805-294-12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) and a briefing on the size and shape of the facility or supported command post (CP), the location of each element, the required instruments, and the installation priority. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The internal communications network is set up according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) or the commander's guidance, and is operational by the time specified in the order. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The section leader prepares a telephone cable or wire installation plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a wire route (based on a map study) that met the requirements of the tactical situation and was easy to construct and maintain.</li> <li>b. Selected the most direct primary and alternate wire routes after conducting a ground reconnaissance.</li> <li>c. Prepared an interim plan indicating the routes of the wire lines.</li> <li>d. Allocated the manpower and materials to accomplish the task.</li> <li>e. Prepared a telephone-traffic diagram showing the number of telephone circuits in the communications system.</li> <li>f. Prepared a telephone directory according to the signal operation instructions (SOI)/signal supplemental instructions (SSI). Included the names and numbers of the telephone-system users.</li> </ul> 2. The section installs a telephone switchboard (SB). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the equipment for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and the appropriate technical manual (TM). Used the end-item list if no packing list was available.</li> <li>b. Positioned the telephone SB on a flat surface, such as a table, packing box, or ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, shelter half, or canvas to protect the SB from the elements.</li> <li>c. Laid the SB on its side with the nameplate up.</li> <li>d. Grounded the equipment using proper grounding techniques according to the appropriate TM.</li> <li>e. Performed SB preoperation procedures according to the appropriate TM.</li> <li>f. Labeled the SB according to the traffic diagram.</li> <li>g. Connected the local and trunk wire lines.</li> </ul> 3. The section installs internal wiring and telephones. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Installed the distribution box.</li> <li>b. Tested the field cable or wire before installing.</li> <li>c. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the communications section leader.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Secured the field wire at all the starting points and at any changes of direction to reduce the strain.</p> <p>e. Used proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points.</p> <p>f. Tagged the wire ties.</p> <p>g. Used the terrain and vegetation to enhance concealment.</p> <p>h. Ensured that all overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads.</p> <p>i. Finished the line-route map indicating the routes of wire lines, SBs, switching centrals, and test stations; the number of circuits along a route; and the type of wire construction.</p> <p>4. The section operates the telephone SB.</p> <p>a. Tested the SB to ensure that it was operational.</p> <p>b. Used the turning hand-ringing generator on the telephone (TA 312/PT) to terminate and ring off circuits as they became available to called parties.</p> <p>c. Processed calls.</p> <p>d. Updated the traffic diagram, as required.</p> <p>e. Performed operator preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the SB according to the appropriate TM.</p> <p>5. The section performs PMCS on the field cable or wire lines.</p> <p>a. Maintained a 20-percent slack in the field cable or wire lines.</p> <p>b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-5710.00-0001	Place a Telephone Set, TA-312/PT or TA-1/PT, into Operation	STP 21-II-MQS
01-5711.02-0001	Install Hot Loop with Telephone TA-312/PT	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
03-3711.12-0001	Implement Operations Security	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
03-3711.12-0002	Protect Classified Information and Material	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

## **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Report Casualties (12-1-0403.05-T01A)  
 (FM 12-6) (AR 600-8-1) (TC 12-17)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Soldiers have been either wounded, killed, captured, or are missing. Casualty reports are arriving from supported units. The unit is equipped with the Tactical Army Combat-Service-Support (CSS) Computer System (TACCS). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Casualty information is processed and provided daily to the supporting personnel service company (PSC) and parent brigade. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section collects casualty information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Logged casualty information on Department of the Army (DA) Form 1594.</li> <li>b. Completed missing information.</li> <li>c. Verified data.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The S1 section processes casualty data.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Posted the battle roster.</li> <li>b. Initiated the casualty feeder report.</li> <li>c. Printed the casualty feeder report.</li> <li>d. Backed up the feeder report file.</li> <li>e. Restored the feeder files.</li> <li>f. Merged the feeder reports for task force units.</li> <li>g. Prepared the transmittal letters.</li> <li>h. Prepared letters of condolence and sympathy and forwarded them to the division Assistant Chief of Staff, G1 (Personnel) (G1) or separate brigade S1.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The personnel staff noncommissioned officer (PSNCO) forwards casualty data.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed casualty feeder reports for accuracy and completeness with data entered on DA Form 1594.</li> <li>b. Reconciled the casualty log with the strength accounting data.</li> <li>c. Corrected any deficiencies.</li> <li>d. Forwarded casualty feeder reports to the servicing PSC.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The battalion S1 disseminates casualty information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided data to the battalion command group and staff.</li> <li>b. Coordinated religious rites with the chaplain.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Perform Strength Accounting (12-1-0404.05-T01A)  
 (FM 12-6) (TC 12-16)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Personnel losses and gains have occurred. The daily personnel status report (PSR) is required. The unit is Tactical Army Combat Service Support (CSS) Computer System (TACCS) equipped. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion strength data for supported units as recorded on the PSR is within plus or minus 5 percent of the actual companies' present-for-duty strength. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section collects strength information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Logged incoming situation reports (SITREPs) and messages from subordinate units.</li> <li>b. Spot-checked strength reports for missing information.</li> <li>c. Collected other personnel strength information from the tactical operation center (TOC) and the battalion aid station.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The personnel and administration center (PAC) updates the Command and Control Strength Reporting System (C2SRS).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Updated the battle roster.</li> <li>b. Entered individual changes.</li> <li>c. Posted the commander's narrative guidance.</li> <li>d. Printed personnel status (PS) and personnel requirements report (PRR).</li> <li>e. Forwarded the PS/PRR to the personnel staff noncommissioned officer (PSNCO).</li> <li>f. Created a TACCS floppy diskette of the PS/PRR.</li> <li>g. Printed an updated battle roster as required and provided it to the companies.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The PSNCO reviews the C2SRS.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed the PS/PRR for completeness and accuracy.</li> <li>b. Cross-checked the primary military occupational specialty (PMOS) or duty military occupation specialty (DMOS) report against the PRR.</li> <li>c. Forwarded the reports to the PAC supervisor.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The PAC supervisor forwards strength information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided data to the supporting personnel service company (PSC).</li> <li>b. Provided data to the brigade S1.</li> <li>c. Provided data to the S1 section of attached units.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 5. The S1 disseminates strength data.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the command group and staff daily.</li> <li>b. Supported the staff decision-planning process with personnel strength information.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A)  
 (FM 19-40) (AR 190-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The enemy soldiers surrendered or were captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The capturing element takes charge of and evacuates EPWs according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) and the search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag (5 Ss and T). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element searches the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Removed the weapons and the documents that had intelligence value.</li> <li>b. Returned the personal items of no military-intelligence value, such as protective clothing and equipment.</li> <li>c. Furnished receipts to the prisoners for their personal property taken.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The element segregates the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Segregated the EPWs by rank, sex, deserters, civilians, nationality, and ideology, when possible.</li> <li>b. Turned the wounded EPWs over to the medical personnel for evacuation through the medical channels.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The element silences the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prevented the EPWs leaders from giving orders.</li> <li>b. Prevented the EPWs from planning escape.</li> <li>c. Did not talk in front of the EPWs except to issue orders and maintain discipline.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The element safeguards the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Removed the EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield.</li> <li>b. Did not allow anyone to abuse the EPWs.</li> <li>c. Treated the EPWs humanely.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. The element tags the EPWs with a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2745.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Annotated the date and time of the capture, the capturing unit, the grid coordinates of the capture, and the circumstances of the capture.</li> <li>b. Attached Part A to the EPWs.</li> <li>c. Retained Part B for the unit records.</li> <li>d. Attached Part C to the property.</li> </ol> </li> <li>6. The element speeds the EPWs to the rear.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Notified higher headquarters (HQ) that the company had EPWs.</li> <li>b. Removed the EPWs rearward to the nearest military police (MP) collecting point.</li> <li>c. Exploited the intelligence information.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Report Engineer Information (05-1-0026)  
 (FM 5-100) (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer battalion is conducting continuous operations. The battalion's tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and in a secure area. The TOC is transferring engineer information to other elements (higher headquarters [HQ] and adjacent and subordinate units). Digital units have performed functionality checks, all digital systems are providing information on the common operational picture (COP) and maintaining situational awareness (SA). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Higher HQ and adjacent and subordinate units have continuous, accurate, and timely engineer information which will have an impact on their operations. Digital units are sending and receiving reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. All reports sent via digital means must also be followed up with the appropriate Department of the Army (DA) form according to standardization agreement (STANAG) and unit tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The battalion TOC (Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) or Operations and Training Officer [US Army] [S3]) receives engineer information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Logged information in a message log on the Maneuver Control System (MCS).</li> <li>b. Requested clarification of information received from the submitting element.</li> <li>c. Maintained a file copy of all hard-copy reports.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The S2 or S3 analyzes the information received and disseminates it to the appropriate action element within the battalion TOC.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disseminated the personnel and administration information to the Adjutant (US Army) (S1) utilizing the MCS.</li> <li>b. Disseminated the intelligence and weather information to the S2.</li> <li>c. Disseminated the operations and maneuver information to the S3.</li> <li>d. Disseminated the logistics and maintenance information to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) utilizing the MCS.</li> <li>e. Disseminated the command-related information (guidance, tactical decisions, and critical resources) to the command group commanding officer (CO) or executive officer (XO).</li> <li>f. Disseminated the information according to the battalion's standing operating procedure (SOP) to action elements utilizing the reporting procedures on the MCS.</li> <li>g. Disseminated the information copies to other elements, as required.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The action element(s) analyzes information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the content validity and filtered out noncritical (nonessential) information.</li> <li>b. Determined the importance of the information to the operation.</li> <li>c. Determined the required actions, coordination, and reports.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The action element(s) acts on the information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted required coordination with engineer and maneuver elements.</li> <li>b. Updated digital overlays, records, status boards, and logs on the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System and the MCS.</li> <li>c. Determined the course of action (COA).</li> <li>d. Selected the COA.</li> <li>e. Obtained guidance or concurrence on the selected COA from relevant elements and the command group, when needed.</li> <li>f. Implemented the COA.</li> <li>g. Prepared required reports according to the battalion's SOP.</li> <li>h. Provided the S2 or S3 with an action summary and all appropriate reports according to the battalion's SOP.</li> </ul> <p>5. The S2 or S3 prepares and submits reports and engineer information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the reports for transmission to subordinate elements and the battalion staff; transmitted/submitted the reports according to the battalion's SOP utilizing the MCS.</li> <li>b. Prepared and transmitted/submitted reports to higher HQ, supported maneuver command, and adjacent elements according to higher HQ's SOP utilizing the MCS.</li> <li>c. Updated digital overlays, records, status boards, and logs, on the MCS, as required.</li> <li>d. Submitted reports to the appropriate elements and HQ utilizing the MCS.</li> <li>e. Logged the submission/transmission of the report/information.</li> <li>f. Updated the command group utilizing the MCS or mobile subscriber radiotelephone terminal (MSRT) as required.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
S1-9060.00-3000	Conduct Company and Battalion Operations According to the Laws of War	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Disrupt a Net Control Station (NCS) (5-OPFOR-0019)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has established a NCS. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** PREPARE AN ENGINEER ESTIMATE (CO) (05-2-0002)  
 (FM 5-100) (FM 101-5) (FM 20-32)  
 (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-102) (FM 5-103)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 5-71-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is performing continuous tactical operations in darkness or in daylight under all weather conditions. The element is either working directly for an engineer unit from which it has received an operation order (OPORD) or is supporting a maneuver force that has received a mission from its higher headquarters (HQ). Digital units have performed functionality and connectivity checks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The engineer estimate gives the element leader feasible courses of action (COAs) consistent with the supported commander's scheme of maneuver. Digital units send and receive reports via FM or digital means, reports are followed up with pertinent DA forms. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader performs a mission analysis.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the intent of the immediate commander and the commander who is two levels up.</li> <li>b. Identified the area of operations (AO).</li> <li>c. Identified the tasks to be performed, including those specified (directed) in the commander's verbal guidance or in the OPORD and those implied by the nature of the operation. The element leader decided which tasks were essential to the success of the mission.</li> <li>d. Identified the constraints or acts requiring completion.</li> <li>e. Identified the restraints or prohibited acts.</li> <li>f. Restated the unit's mission in terms of who, what (including all essential tasks), when, where, and why.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader performs a situation analysis.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the composition of supported operations and forces, the nature of the operations, unusual requirements, and other factors affecting the size and scope of the support mission.</li> <li>b. Identified the impact of--                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Precipitation and temperature on the--   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Trafficability of enemy and friendly combat vehicles.</li> <li>(b) Water obstacle depth, the water flow rate, and the bank conditions.</li> <li>(c) Forces' ability to dig positions and tank ditches.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Fog or limited visibility on the positioning of obstacles.</li> <li>(3) Limited visibility and reduced trafficability on engineer-vehicle capabilities to maneuver and keep pace with the maneuver unit's fighting vehicles.</li> <li>(4) Extreme weather conditions on the employment of conventional and scatterable mines.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Identified the terrain for--</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Observation or fields of fire. Analyzed the impact of observation or fields of fire on obstacle placement (both friendly and enemy). Determined what items, buildings, and/or vegetation needed to be cleared to improve observation.</p> <p>(2) Cover and concealment. Identified concealed locations for engineer equipment and materials, especially during breaching and river-crossing operations. Identified possible combat trails offering cover and concealment from enemy ground, air, and satellite surveillance.</p> <p>(3) Obstacles. Identified existing, natural, and man-made obstacles and their impact on maneuver, avenues of approach, and placement of reinforcing obstacles. Evaluated these with respect to friendly and enemy maneuver and the type of unit.</p> <p>(4) Key or decisive terrain. Determined potential engineer tasks required to facilitate friendly control and/or deny enemy control.</p> <p>(5) Avenues of approach. Identified friendly and enemy mobility corridors and avenues of approach based on the unit. Evaluated engineer actions to enhance or hinder movement on these avenues of approach.</p> <p>d. Identified other characteristics important to the engineer plan.</p> <p>e. Coordinated with the supported unit's Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) to develop the enemy situation by providing input about the enemy's engineer capability.</p> <p>(1) Estimated the strength of the enemy's engineer units, including any information (confirmed, suspected, or based on doctrinal techniques) concerning reinforcement to organic enemy engineers from higher enemy echelons.</p> <p>(2) Determined the location of the enemy's engineer units and other units having engineer-related capability, including helicopters and artillery units with remotely-delivered mine capability.</p> <p>(3) Assessed the enemy's capabilities for breaching, gap crossing, obstacle emplacement, survivability, and emplacement of remotely-delivered mines from aircraft or artillery.</p> <p>(4) Evaluated current significant activities, including engineer battlefield tactics and techniques, to identify weaknesses and strengths.</p> <p>(5) Predicted the possible and most likely COAs on the enemy and the impact of the enemy engineer situation on these COAs.</p> <p>(6) Created templates of the location of enemy obstacles (to include scatterable minefields) based on available intelligence and doctrinal templates.</p> <p>(7) Created templates of the location of the enemy's engineer assets within the enemy's formation for offensive operations.</p> <p>f. Evaluated his own situation.</p> <p>(1) Identified the present disposition of major tactical elements, possible COAs, and current and projected operations.</p> <p>(2) Identified the disposition of logistics units and facilities supporting engineer operations, levels of engineer Class IV and Class V items, and the availability of transportation assets.</p> <p>(3) Identified the present disposition and capabilities of the elements, and estimated the completion times of the current tasks and the combat-support units required to assist with engineer tasks (especially scatterable mines).</p> <p>* 3. The element leader develops at least two separate COAs to accomplish the mission, or develops an engineer plan as part of each COA under development by the maneuver force.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Identified all tasks and the necessary resources to accomplish them for each location or each supported unit. Calculated counter mobility capabilities based on the platoon, time available, and unit planning factors (used planning factors in Field Manual (FM) 20-32, only if unit planning factors were unknown). Included the use of scatterable-mine laying systems in capability calculations.</p> <p>(1) Computed blade hours using known data. If actual data was not available, used planning factors in FM 5-34, FM 5-102, or FM 5-103.</p> <p>(2) Computed the element hours.</p> <p>(3) Identified any unique or special equipment requirements.</p> <p>(4) Identified supply requirements by class of supply and specific items.</p> <p>b. Determined priorities for tasks based on guidance received from the higher commander.</p> <p>c. Allocated engineer forces to--</p> <p>(1) Meet the guidance of the higher commander.</p> <p>(2) Accomplish all tasks.</p> <p>(3) Employ assets efficiently with no wasted squad or equipment time.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader analyzes each COA.</p> <p>a. War-gamed the engineer plan for each COA against anticipated enemy actions and reactions. Evaluated the plan against the significant factors impacting on it.</p> <p>b. Determined shortfalls by comparing resource requirements with available assets.</p> <p>c. Reduced shortfalls by establishing priorities, sequencing activities, selecting alternate methods, and altering the engineer plan as necessary, until the requirement was within plus or minus 10 percent of available resources.</p> <p>NOTE: If the engineer plan cannot meet the minimum critical maneuver requirements, then it is not feasible and the plan is invalid. The commander must recognize this and formulate a new plan, starting with subtask 3.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader compares each COA and selects the one to best accomplish the mission.</p> <p>a. Determined the selection technique to use in the comparison.</p> <p>b. Used the significant factors identified in subtask 3a.</p> <p>c. Selected the best COA based on subjective judgment along with numerical techniques.</p> <p>NOTE: The commander may use numerical factors in his selection technique; however, the final decision is not based solely on simple mathematics.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader states his decision to his subordinates.</p> <p>a. Determined the company's task organization and allocated resources.</p> <p>b. Summarized resource requirements by element hours, equipment, and logistics, for each location or each supported unit.</p> <p>c. Assigned each task to a subordinate element.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader recommends a COA to the supported maneuver commander.</p> <p>a. Stated which COA can best be supported from the engineer perspective.</p> <p>b. Identified major deficiencies that the maneuver commander must remedy, including recommendations for eliminating or reducing them.</p> <p>c. Recommended the command or support relationships and task organization as necessary, tasks to be directed to subordinate elements, and priorities for engineer support.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-195-4050	Prepare Engineer Estimates	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Prepare an Engineer Annex (05-2-0003)  
 (FM 101-5) (FM 5-100) (FM 5-71-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer company is supporting a maneuver force in a tactical operation. The company commander is the force engineer and must prepare an engineer annex as part of the supported unit's operation order (OPORD). Digital units have performed functionality and connectivity checks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The annex contains the essential information needed to support the maneuver commander's operation. The annex's concept is clear and is understood by the maneuver force. Digital units send orders and reports via digital means and follow up with a hard copy. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander selects an annex format based on the amount and type of information it will contain, the time available to produce it, and guidance received from the maneuver unit's Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3). He uses any combination of the following formats:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. A written annex using the basic five-paragraph order format.</li> <li>b. Situational awareness (SA) overlays of existing and proposed friendly obstacles and their control measures (belts, zones, restricted areas, lanes, or gaps); known and templated enemy obstacles; and nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC)-contaminated areas.</li> <li>c. An obstacle list containing all of the obstacles.</li> <li>d. Engineer execution matrixes of all identified engineer tasks, all identified logistic and coordination requirements, and marginal notes to cover any other needed information.</li> </ul> <p>2. The engineer company ensures that the annex meets the correct criteria.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that information from the estimate process was applied.</li> <li>b. Verified that it contained any information related to the engineer plan that was not covered elsewhere in the order.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The annex may contain information already present in the parent order if it is necessary for clarity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Ensured that it did not contain items covered in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP); however, it may have referenced the SOP.</li> <li>d. Ensured that it was directed to the major subordinate elements of the maneuver unit, not just the engineers.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The engineer annex is not the engineer unit's OPORD. It covers the entire engineer plan, not just the part pertaining to engineer units.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Ensured that it was clear, complete, brief, timely, avoided qualified directives, did not contain irrelevant information, and was issued with the OPORD.</li> <li>f. Ensured that it was integrated with the other parts of the OPORD.                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Coordinated all tasks directed to units other than engineers prior to issuing the annex.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Coordinated all details with the appropriate battle-staff element.</p> <p>3. The company commander prepares the annex using the written five-paragraph order format.</p> <p>a. SITUATION.</p> <p>(1) Enemy Forces. Identified aspects significantly impacting engineer operations, including terrain, weather, and enemy engineer capability.</p> <p>(2) Friendly Forces. Identified the designation, location, and activities of higher and adjacent engineers. Described other elements capable of assisting with the engineer plan.</p> <p>NOTE: Nonengineer units with scatterable-mine emplacement capability (Artillery, Army Aviation, and Air Force) are identified here.</p> <p>(3) Attachments and Detachments. Included only if needed for clarity.</p> <p>b. MISSION. Stated the mission of engineers in support of the base OPORD.</p> <p>c. EXECUTION.</p> <p>(1) Scheme of engineer operations (SOEO).</p> <p>(a) Contained a brief statement of the concept of the engineer plan, including the priority of engineer support to subordinate elements. The statement should be precise and specific.</p> <p>(b) Obstacles. Identified individual obstacles and obstacle groups, the type (reserved or preliminary), authorized commander (for reserved obstacles), and subordinate-unit obstacle responsibilities, as appropriate. Referred to an overlay and obstacle table.</p> <p>(c) Scatterable mines. Explained the employment concept, the authority for long and short self-destruct (by system), other requirements or limitations, and the allocation to subordinate elements, as appropriate. Identified nonengineer units responsible for emplacing scatterable mines.</p> <p>(2) Task to subordinate units. Identified tasks for subordinate maneuver units, engineers under the direct control of the issuing headquarters (HQ), and other elements assigned engineer tasks by the maneuver commander.</p> <p>(3) Coordinating instructions, as necessary. Ensured that the measures and reporting procedures applying to two or more subordinate units were completed.</p> <p>d. SERVICE SUPPORT. Contained logistic information affecting the engineer plan, specifically Class IV or Class V supplies and transportation. Identified available host-nation assets and their location. Identified allocations and priorities for command-regulated items.</p> <p>(1) Command-regulated classes of supply.</p> <p>(2) Class IV and Class V supplies distribution plan.</p> <p>(3) Transportation.</p> <p>(4) Medical evacuation and hospitalization.</p> <p>(5) Civil-military operations.</p> <p>e. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.</p> <p>(1) Command. Location of engineer command posts. Special command arrangements.</p> <p>(2) Signal. Listed the specific signal operation instructions (SOI) index used by engineer elements; identified the call sign and frequency of supporting units from another HQ. Identified any alternate means of communications for engineer missions such as target demolition and lane closure. Provided instructions for coordinating and establishing communications.</p>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** CONDUCT COMBAT OPERATIONS (05-2-1219)  
 (FM 100-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A company receives an operation order (OPORD) from the battalion to perform tactical combat operations in daylight and darkness. The company commander issues written or verbal orders to the unit. Digital units have performed functionality and connectivity checks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company moves by the time specified in the OPORD, with all table of organization and equipment (TOE) weapons, equipment, and a complete basic load of supplies specified by the commander. All personnel have been briefed on the company's mission and their assigned tasks and duties. Coordination with the adjacent and supporting units is complete and all attachments have been briefed and inspected. Digital units monitor and update their ABCS to maintain situational awareness (SA) and the common operational picture(COP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander receives the OPORD from the battalion company commander. The company commander--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the staff personnel.</li> <li>b. Clarified any questions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The company commander performs a mission and situational analysis.</li> <li>* 3. The company commander issues a warning order to the company. The warning order included--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The situation.</li> <li>b. The mission.</li> <li>c. The time and the place of the operation.</li> <li>d. Specific instructions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The company commander, aided by the company headquarters staff, develops, analyzes, and compares the possible courses of action.</li> <li>* 5. The company commander initiates movement, as required. The units involved in the movement include the--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Quartering party.</li> <li>b. Selected subunits.</li> <li>c. Entire company.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 6. The company commander conducts a reconnaissance to determine the location; the strength; the disposition; the activity of the enemy; and the observation and fields of fire, cover and concealment, obstacles, key terrain, and avenues of approach (OCOKA). The company commander--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the intelligence needs.</li> <li>b. Assigned reconnaissance tasks. The company commander used leaders' reconnaissance, patrols, or elements in contact to obtain the required information.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Requested an information update from the battalion staff.</p> <p>* 7. The company commander decides on a course of action. The company commander states which significant factors are decisive in selecting a course of action.</p> <p>* 8. The company commander completes the plan based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available and civilian considerations (METT-TC); intelligence from the reconnaissance; and other sources. The company commander prepares an OPORD.</p> <p>* 9. The company commander issues his orders, with the appropriate annexes to his subordinate leaders. The company commander--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided ample planning and preparation time to his subordinate leaders, using only one-third of the available time.</li> <li>b. Clarified any questions.</li> </ol> <p>*10. The company prepares for the mission. The company commander--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested combat-support (CS) assets to facilitate his mission.</li> <li>b. Coordinated the necessary plans and actions with higher headquarters and adjacent and supporting units.</li> <li>c. Received the attachment personnel. The attachments were checked for mission readiness, assigned to a point of contact within the company and, as time permitted, briefed on-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The company's mission and the company commander's intent.</li> <li>(2) Their specific tasks.</li> <li>(3) Pertinent company standing operating procedures (SOPs), warning alarms, and signals.</li> <li>(4) The overall plan.</li> <li>(5) Recent enemy activity.</li> <li>(6) Recent company activity.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>NOTE: The coordination of plans and actions and the receipt of the attachment personnel may also be performed by other representatives (the executive officer [XO]; the first sergeant [ISG]; the nuclear, biological, and chemical [NBC] leader; the noncommissioned officer [NCO]; the communications chief; the platoon leader; or the section leader).</p> <p>11. The subordinate elements prepare for the mission.</p> <p>*12. The subordinate leaders conduct brief backs of their plans to the company commander.</p> <p>13. The company rehearses key actions as the situation permits.</p> <p>14. The company prepares all field expedient equipment needed for their tasks.</p> <p>*15. Key leaders prepare for operations. The key leaders--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Supervised personnel.</li> <li>b. Inspected personnel.</li> <li>c. Conducted necessary brief backs with personnel.</li> <li>d. Rehearsed operations.</li> <li>e. Continued coordination at various levels.</li> </ol> <p>*16. The company plans the sustainment of combat operations. The company commander--</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Analyzed the mission, along with the XO and the 1SG, with input from other key NCOs and leaders, (the communication chief, the NBC leader, the platoon leaders, the platoon sergeants, the mortar-section leader, and the antiarmor-section leader) and determined the ammunition, supply, and service requirements.</p> <p>b. Issued guidance on soldiers' loads. The loads were redistributed according to the--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Combat load. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>( a) The fighting load.</li> <li>( b) The approach-march load.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Sustainment load.</li> </ul> <p>c. Monitored the transportation requirements. The XO and the ISG determined the transportation needs to support the operation and prepared the necessary requests. The unit--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Requested transportation when the time and distance factors necessitated.</li> <li>(2) Employed transportation to reduce soldier fatigue (when the tactical situation permitted).</li> <li>(3) Moved excess equipment and personal items by transportation to comply with the soldiers' load guidance.</li> </ul> <p>d. Monitored the supply requirements. The XO or the ISG coordinated with the company supply sergeant and the battalion Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) and selected the supply techniques to support the tactical plan. The selected techniques provided adequate supplies when and where they were needed and did not compromise the company's security.</p> <p>e. Determined the special equipment and supply requirements. The XO or the ISG requested, received, and distributed the equipment and supplies.</p> <p>f. Established and executed a rest plan for all company members (particularly key personnel and leaders) based on the unit's SOP, the mission analysis, and the current orders. The rest plan included the--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Coverage of leadership positions, key unit functions, and the continuous manning of all key positions.</li> <li>(2) Procedures for ensuring that the performance and the judgment of the leaders and key personnel were not degraded by fatigue.</li> </ul> <p>17. The company performs continuous reconnaissance during the operation. The company--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the enemy's strength, location, activity, and equipment (upon contact).</li> <li>b. Identified the important aspects of the terrain based on the OCOKA.</li> </ul> <p>18. The company monitors the actions of higher headquarters and the adjacent and supporting units. The platoon leader is informed of the--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Enemy contact size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE).</li> <li>b. Friendly locations, actions, and movement.</li> <li>c. Calls for fire.</li> <li>d. Orders from higher headquarters to other units.</li> </ul> <p>*19. The company commander issues orders or modifies his original plan. The order or change must be explained in terms of the--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Current company mission.</li> <li>b. Higher commander's intent.</li> <li>c. Enemy situation.</li> <li>d. Additional engineer resources and the revision to the plans.</li> <li>e. Additional engineer resources required.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Friendly situation. g. Terrain. h. Troops available.</p> <p>*20. The company commander issues fragmentary orders (FRAGO) to the company and the supporting units. The FRAGO--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Contained the situation, mission, element tasks, and the changes in the task organization (if needed).</li> <li>b. Reached and was acknowledged by all subordinate leaders.</li> <li>c. Reflected a changed situation or order from higher headquarters.</li> </ul> <p>21. The company reacts to orders from higher headquarters. The company--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Acknowledged receipt of the orders in accordance with unit's SOP.</li> <li>b. Executed changes in the task organization, as required or directed.</li> <li>c. Determined short-term changes or the new requirements for engineer support to the maneuver plan.</li> <li>d. Reported the execution of orders to higher headquarters and the adjacent units according the unit's SOP.</li> </ul> <p>22. The company coordinates actions with friendly units during the operation. The company commander informs higher headquarters and the adjacent and supporting units of the company's location, actions, and changes in mission.</p> <p>*23. The company headquarters reports combat-critical information, according to the unit's SOP, to higher headquarters and the adjacent and supporting units. The report includes--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. A SALUTE report.</li> <li>b. Terrain information.</li> <li>c. Any variations from the plan.</li> <li>d. Changes to the obstacle database plan maintained at the company level.</li> <li>e. Changes in the friendly situation.</li> <li>f. The initiation of actions by the company.</li> <li>g. The CS or combat-service-support (CSS) requests required to execute the tasks.</li> <li>h. The information from other friendly units (that the higher headquarters cannot monitor).</li> </ul> <p>*24. The company headquarters disseminates information to all subordinate units. The information is issued--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. On enemy contact.</li> <li>b. When an adjacent unit's actions, location, or movement affects the company.</li> <li>c. When changes in the company situation occur.</li> <li>d. When the battalion issues an order or the situation changes.</li> <li>e. When the terrain information affects the company.</li> <li>f. When changes in CS or CSS affect the company.</li> </ul> <p>25. The company reassigns personnel after sustaining casualties.</p> <p>*26. The XO or 1SG reassigns individual personnel based on the company commander's guidance, to ensure that leadership and other key positions are filled and critical weapons are manned.</p> <p>*27. The company commander reorganizes the squads and platoons when the individual reassignments are inadequate to ensure that each squad or platoon has leadership and enough soldiers to accomplish their missions.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat-service-support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK:** Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK:** Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (05-2-7008)  
 (FM 5-71-2) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A company is performing tactical operations. The company receives a new mission that requires the preparation of an OPORD. Digital units have functional digital communications systems and are linked to the task force (TF) tactical operations center (TOC). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The OPORD follows the commander's intent, is understandable, and contains all of the information necessary to accomplish the mission. Digital units can send or receive the orders via digital communications means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander writes an OPORD following the five-paragraph format.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the situation paragraph contained information about the enemy forces, friendly forces, attachments, and detachments.</li> <li>b. Stated the mission clearly. Included who, what, when, where, and why.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the execution paragraph included the commander's intent, the subordinate unit's instructions, and coordinating instructions.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Address any environmental considerations in the coordinating instructions. Include specific measures to minimize environmental damage.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Ensured that the service-support paragraph contained combat-service-support (CSS) and unit-support instructions. If the paragraph is too long, use an annex. Otherwise, use the following paragraph sample format:                         <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Material and services.</li> <li>(2) Medical.</li> <li>(3) Personnel.</li> <li>(4) Civil military.</li> <li>(5) As necessary.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Ensured that the command and signal paragraphs specified the command post (CP) locations for supporting the units and gave the instructions for coordinating and establishing communications by different means (digital and frequency modulated [FM]).</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The company commander ensures that the necessary information is included and briefed to the subordinate elements.</p> <p>* 3. The company commander ensures that the order is disseminated or briefed in time to satisfy the 1/3-2/3 rule (allow subordinates 2/3 of the available time).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-326-5626	PREPARE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Plan or Control Augmentation Support (05-2-7721)  
 (FM 5-100) (FM 5-114)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A unit has been tasked with a mission that requires additional resources. Augmentation support is available. Digital units have functional digital systems. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company staff determines the augmentation support necessary to accomplish the mission, submits a request immediately following the estimate process, and assists with the coordination and logistical support for unhindered mission execution by the attached unit. Digital units can request or report via digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander conducts a mission analysis and determines the resource requirements and resource availability during the estimate process. The commander--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined, along with the executive officer (XO) or the first sergeant (1SG) and the operations noncommissioned officer (NCO), the resources required to accomplish the mission.</li> <li>b. Determined the availability of organic resources.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with the XO to include the requirements for rations, maintenance, fuel, and lubricants to support the augmentation unit, to include shortfalls such as equipment maintenance.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The XO requests augmentation support. The XO--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested augmentation support from higher headquarters (HQ), if not supporting a maneuver unit.</li> <li>b. Requested augmentation support from higher HQ and the maneuver commander, if supporting a maneuver unit.</li> <li>c. Submitted requests immediately after the estimate process was complete.</li> <li>d. Included the following information in the request:                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The command or support relationship.</li> <li>(2) The amount and type of personnel and equipment required.</li> <li>(3) The length of time needed to accomplish the mission.</li> <li>(4) The mission of the company.</li> <li>(5) The augmentation-support mission.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The company commander and his staff modifies the estimate process based on the actual augmentation support received. The company commander and his staff--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prioritized the effort for the supporting unit.</li> <li>b. Coordinated, along with the XO, for logistical support for food, fuel, and maintenance based upon the command or support relationship.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The XO acts as the liaison between the augmentation unit and the engineer platoons. The XO--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the time, the place, and the attendance requirements for issuance of the company operation order (OPORD) (if not already issued).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Determined the time and the place for a liaison between the augmentation unit and the engineer platoon.</p> <p>* 5. The company commander issues the OPORD and addresses the items critical to the mission. The company commander--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Addressed the command and support relationships for augmentation support.</li> <li>b. Addressed the specific operating instructions. The operating instructions included the following:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The mission to be accomplished.</li> <li>(2) The communications and electronics instructions and the established call signs.</li> <li>(3) The enemy situation and the job-site security instructions.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>* 6. The XO or the 1SG coordinates for administrative and logistic support. The XO or the 1SG--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided standing operating procedures and highlighted the portions pertinent to the mission.</li> <li>b. Briefed the meal operations, including times, procedures, and supply accounting.</li> <li>c. Maintained personnel accountability.</li> <li>d. Maintained fuel and maintenance allocations and acquisitions.</li> </ol> <p>NOTE: Although many items are addressed with the battalion staff, they must also be addressed with the attached maneuver force.</p> <p>* 7. The company commander inspects the attached unit and establishes the chain of command. The company commander--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted an information exchange to determine the personnel's understanding of the mission and their role to accomplish it.</li> <li>b. Inspected all personnel and equipment to ensure compliance with the OPORD instructions. Inspected items such as dog tags; licenses; weapons; nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) equipment; logbooks; and Department of Defense (DD) Form 2404.</li> </ol> <p>* 8. The company staff monitors the attached unit. The company staff--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received reports on personnel strength, maintenance, mission status, and mission updates as required.</li> <li>b. Shifted assets as necessary.</li> <li>c. Inspected the quality of the workmanship.</li> <li>d. Visited the work sites to maintain high morale and received feedback regarding support.</li> </ol> <p>* 9. The company commander terminates augmentation support.</p> <p>*10. The XO ensures open accounts are closed.</p> <p>*11. The XO accounts for all classified material.</p> <p>*12. The 1SG accounts for all equipment used by the attached unit.</p> <p>*13. The company commander reports the mission accomplishment to higher HQ.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (05-3-1018.05-R01A)  
 (FM 5-10) (FM 101-5) (FM 5-71-2)  
 (FM 71-1) (FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives a mission from a warning order (WO), a fragmentary order (FRAGO), or an operation order (OPORD). Digital units have operational digital communications equipment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit leader gives a WO, conducts a leader's reconnaissance, issues an OPORD, and supervises the preparation for the assigned mission within the allotted time. Digital units have the ability to conduct map reconnaissance using the Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS); the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) can be used to submit reports and orders and to update the common operational picture (COP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader receives the mission in a WO, a FRAGO or an OPORD from its higher headquarters. The element leader determines the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC); the needed supplies and equipment; and special tasks to assign.</li> <li>* 2. The element leader issues a WO to the subordinate leaders. The element leader--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stated the mission (nature of the operation).</li> <li>b. Identified the task organization.</li> <li>c. Stated the time of the operation.</li> <li>d. Gave any special instructions, such as drills to be rehearsed, precombat checks (PCCs), and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>e. Stated the element time line.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader develops a tentative plan while the element prepares for the mission. The element leader--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed the plan based on the METT-TC.</li> <li>b. Planned the available time using the reverse-planning process.</li> <li>c. Used no more than one-third of the available time, leaving the remainder for subordinate element preparation.</li> <li>d. Ensured that subordinate leaders began the PCCs and reconfigured equipment based on the mission. Subordinate leaders checked rations, water, weapons, ammunition, individual uniforms and equipment, mission-essential equipment, and the individual soldier's knowledge of the mission.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The element continues assembly-area activities and security.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained equipment and weapons.</li> <li>b. Conducted personal hygiene.</li> <li>c. Resupplied the equipment and materials, to include small-arms ammunition, demolitions, mines, and the refueling of the vehicles.</li> <li>d. Rehearsed battle and crew drills.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Conducted weapon test firing (if possible).                      f. Ate and rested.                      g. Maintained security.</p> <p>5. The element begins movement. The element leader initiates movement before completing the plan. The subordinate leader moves the element in the absence of the element leader.</p> <p>NOTE: This task step may be omitted, occur in a different sequence, or be done concurrently with another task step.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader conducts a reconnaissance. The element leader--                      a. Conducted a map reconnaissance as a minimum. (When practical, the subordinate leaders participated in the reconnaissance.)                      b. Conducted a ground reconnaissance (usually as part of a larger force).                          (1) Included as many subordinate leaders as practical.                          (2) Identified the critical areas to the mission.                          (3) Moved as far forward as the time and the situation permitted.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader completes the plan. The element leader--                      a. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the map or ground reconnaissance.                      b. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the available equipment, personnel, and material.                      c. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the intelligence gained by reconnaissance assets.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader verbally issues the completed order, in a FRAGO or an OPORD format, to the subordinate leaders and to the attached leaders. The order contains the following information:                      NOTE: The order may be given to the entire element at the same time.                      a. SITUATION.                          (1) Enemy forces.                          (2) Friendly forces.                          (3) Attachments and detachments.                      b. MISSION.                      c. EXECUTION.                          (1) Concept of the operation.                              (a) Scheme of maneuver.                              (b) Fires.                              (c) Reconnaissance and surveillance.                              (d) Intelligence.                              (e) Engineer support.                              (f) Air defense.                              (g) Information operations.                          (2) Subunit tasks.                          (3) Coordinating instructions. At a minimum the element leader must address the--                              (a) Time or condition when the plan or order becomes effective.                              (b) Commander's critical information requirements (CCIR).                              (c) Risk-reduction control measures.                      NOTE: The element leader determined the risk-reduction control measures by using the 5 steps of the risk-management process. For additional information, the element leader referred to Field Manual (FM) 101-5.                          (d) Rules of engagement.                          (e) Environmental considerations.                          (f) Force protection.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. SERVICE SUPPORT.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Support concept.</li> <li>(2) Materials and services.</li> <li>(3) Medical evacuation and hospitalization.</li> <li>(4) Personnel.</li> <li>(5) Civil Military.</li> </ul> <p>e. COMMAND and SIGNAL.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Command.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) The location of the element leadership, support-element leadership, and the command posts for the operation.</li> <li>(b) Succession of command. (If not stated in the element's standing operating procedure [SOP] or tactical standing operating procedure [TACSOP]).</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Signal.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Signal operation instructions (SOI) in effect.</li> <li>(b) Radio communication restrictions.</li> <li>(c) Visual and pyrotechnic signals.</li> <li>(d) Code words and reports specific to the operation.</li> <li>(e) Communications security (COMSEC) guidelines and procedures.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 9. The subordinate leaders complete the PCCs. The element leaders conduct the PCIs.</p> <p>NOTE: Subordinate leaders can conduct the PCCs on receipt of a WO or a FRAGO. The element should have mission-specific PCC/PCI checklists in the element TACSOP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked/inventoried equipment and ensured that the items were serviceable and that the elements had everything specified in the element SOP and the items required for the specific mission.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the element had adequate resupply ammunition, food, water, repair parts, fuel, medical supplies, obstacle material, demolitions, and mines.</li> <li>c. Conducted a communications check.</li> <li>d. Ensured that personnel, equipment, and carriers were camouflaged and that the weapons were test fired.</li> <li>e. Questioned personnel to ensure that they understood their task and purpose and that of the element's headquarters.</li> <li>f. Inspected personnel, vehicles, weapons, and equipment just before starting the mission.</li> </ul> <p>*10. The leaders of the element conduct at least one type of rehearsal according to FM 101-5.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security	ARTEP 5-025-66-MTP ARTEP 5-026-34-MTP ARTEP 5-027-10-MTP ARTEP 5-027-35-MTP ARTEP 5-053-11-MTP ARTEP 5-063-10-MTP ARTEP 5-063-11-MTP ARTEP 5-063-35-MTP ARTEP 5-155-66-MTP ARTEP 5-156-34-MTP ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP ARTEP 5-157-35-MTP ARTEP 5-215-66-MTP ARTEP 5-216-34-MTP ARTEP 5-217-10-MTP ARTEP 5-217-35-MTP ARTEP 5-425-66-MTP ARTEP 5-426-34-MTP ARTEP 5-427-10-MTP ARTEP 5-427-35-MTP ARTEP 5-445-64-MTP ARTEP 5-445-66-MTP ARTEP 5-446-34-MTP ARTEP 5-446-36-MTP ARTEP 5-447-10-MTP ARTEP 5-447-11-MTP ARTEP 5-447-35-MTP ARTEP 5-447-37-MTP
07-3-4129.05-T01A	Defend a Battle Position	ARTEP 5-026-34-MTP ARTEP 5-027-10-MTP ARTEP 5-027-35-MTP ARTEP 5-053-11-MTP ARTEP 5-053-12-MTP ARTEP 5-053-35-MTP ARTEP 5-063-10-MTP ARTEP 5-063-11-MTP ARTEP 5-063-35-MTP ARTEP 5-113-11-MTP ARTEP 5-113-12-MTP ARTEP 5-113-35-MTP ARTEP 5-156-34-MTP ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP ARTEP 5-157-35-MTP ARTEP 5-216-34-MTP ARTEP 5-217-10-MTP ARTEP 5-217-35-MTP ARTEP 5-335-66-MTP ARTEP 5-336-34-MTP ARTEP 5-337-10-MTP ARTEP 5-337-35-MTP ARTEP 5-413-35-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 5-415-66-MTP
		ARTEP 5-416-34-MTP
		ARTEP 5-417-13-MTP
		ARTEP 5-417-14-MTP
		ARTEP 5-417-17-MTP
		ARTEP 5-417-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-423-11-MTP
		ARTEP 5-423-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-424-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-426-34-MTP
		ARTEP 5-427-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-427-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-434-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-435-66-MTP
		ARTEP 5-435-67-MTP
		ARTEP 5-436-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-436-37-MTP
		ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-437-11-MTP
		ARTEP 5-437-36-MTP
		ARTEP 5-437-38-MTP
		ARTEP 5-443-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-446-34-MTP
		ARTEP 5-446-36-MTP
		ARTEP 5-447-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-447-11-MTP
		ARTEP 5-447-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-447-37-MTP
		ARTEP 5-500-21-MTP
		ARTEP 5-500-22-MTP
		ARTEP 5-500-24-MTP
		ARTEP 5-510-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-510-12-MTP
		ARTEP 5-510-16-MTP
		ARTEP 5-510-18-MTP
		ARTEP 5-520-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-540-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-540-11-MTP
		ARTEP 5-540-12-MTP
		ARTEP 5-540-13-MTP
07-3-4129.05-T01D	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION	ARTEP 5-335-60-MTP
		ARTEP 5-335-65-MTP
		ARTEP 5-335-70-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-0214.05-T01A)  
 (FM 24-18) (FM 24-1) (FM 24-19)  
 (FM 24-33)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is tactically deployed and must establish the communications network. The operators have been briefed and issued extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI) and the standing signal instructions (SSI), the numerical cipher, the authenticated system, the operations codes, and the brevity lists. Situational hazards such as nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) conditions; opposing forces (OPFOR); electronic warfare (EW); and directional finding ability exists. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operators establish and enter a radio net no later than the time prescribed in the operation order (OPORD) or the operation plan (OPLAN). The net is not compromised. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The radio operators install a radio set for operation.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secured radios in mount.</li> <li>b. Connected audio accessories.</li> <li>c. Installed antennas.</li> <li>d. Performed before-operation preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS).</li> <li>e. Performed radio operational checks.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The radio operators make initial entry into the nets.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained appropriate call signs, suffixes, and frequencies from the SOI and/or the SSI.</li> <li>b. Entered a radio net.</li> <li>c. Authenticated when challenged by the net control station (NCS).</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The radio operators recognize frequency interference.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Recognized jamming or interference.</li> <li>b. Determined if the interference was internal or external.</li> <li>c. Determined if the interference was intentional or unintentional.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The radio operators initiate prescribed electronic counter-countermeasures (ECCM).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Continued to operate.</li> <li>b. Increased the transmit power.</li> <li>c. Tuned the receiver for max signal.</li> <li>d. Relocated the antenna.</li> <li>e. Requested a change of frequency.</li> <li>f. Reported suspected jamming to the immediate supervisor.</li> <li>g. Submitted meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder reports.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. The radio operators employ preventive ECCM and radio procedures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used communications security (COMSEC) equipment (secure), if available (transmission security (TSEC)/KY-38 or TSEC/KY-57).</li> <li>b. Loaded the appropriate key variables using KYK-13 or KOI-15.</li> <li>c. Used only approved radiotelephone procedures as required by the SOI and/or the SSI.</li> <li>d. Encrypted and decrypted grid coordinates using the SOI and/or the SSI (not necessary in secure-voice operation).</li> <li>e. Kept the length (not more than 20 seconds per transmission) and the number of transmissions to a minimum.</li> <li>f. Used the lowest power setting required to communicate with desired stations.</li> <li>g. Used the correct call signs and frequencies.</li> <li>h. Observed periods of radio-listening silence.</li> <li>i. Adhered to net discipline.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-5700.01-0002	Determine Call Signs, Frequencies, and Item Numbers	STP 21-II-MQS
01-5700.01-0003	Employ a Numeral Cipher Authentication System	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINGGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net (11-5-1102.05-T01A)

(FM 24-19) (FM 20-3) (FM 24-18)  
 (FM 24-33) (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The team has been briefed and has extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI) and the standing signal instructions (SSI), the appropriate loading devices with keys, a radio-net diagram, maps, and grid coordinates. Subtasks 1 through 4 are done in the motor pool or staging area prior to going to the field location. General condition applies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The SINGGARS radio sets are operational according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) and the operation plan (OPLAN) or operation order (OPORD). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The supervisor checks all radios for completeness and operability.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the vehicular and manpack systems were assembled correctly.</li> </ul> <p>WARNING: High voltages exist at connector J1 on the mounting adapter. Be sure J1 is covered or capped when not in use.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Ensured that the operator logged the amp hours (manpack only).</li> <li>c. Ensured that the preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) were completed.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The supervisor selects the site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected the primary and the alternate locations within the general site.</li> <li>b. Established and maintained camouflage discipline.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the location provided effective use of the terrain in an electronic warfare (EW) environment.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the location avoided interference from power lines and other friendly sources of frequency interference.</li> </ul> <p>3. The net members perform pre-mission checks for a SINGGARS FH cold-start net opening.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed before-operation PMCS.</li> <li>b. Loaded the transmission security key (TSK) using MX-10579 or MS-18290 (nonintegrated communications security [non-ICOM] only).</li> <li>c. Loaded the hop set using MX-18290 (ICOM only).</li> <li>d. Loaded the traffic encryption key (TEK) using KYK-13.</li> </ul> <p>4. The net control station (NCS) performs pre-mission checks for SINGGARS FH cold-start net opening.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed preoperational PMCS.</li> <li>b. Loaded the TSK and the hop set using MX-10579 or MX18290 (non-ICOM only).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Loaded the hop set using MX-18290 (ICOM only).</li> <li>d. Loaded the TEK using KYK-13.</li> <li>e. Loaded the FH sync-time according to the SOI and/or the SSI.</li> <li>f. Loaded the cue frequency.</li> <li>g. Directed the alternate NCS to load the cue frequency as required.</li> <li>h. Changed the net identification according to the SOI and/or the SSI.</li> </ul> <p>5. The NCS opens the net.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued the net call in the secure mode on the MAN channel.</li> <li>b. Issued the electronic counter-countermeasures [ECCM] remote fill (ERF) instructions and sent the ERF.</li> <li>c. Set the channel switch to the hop set channel and issued the net call.</li> <li>d. Opened the net.</li> <li>e. Reset the channel switch to MAN and called missing net members.</li> <li>f. Repeated the cold start.</li> <li>g. Set the FCTN switch to SQ ON.</li> </ul> <p>6. The net members enter the net.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Responded in the correct sequence to the net call.</li> <li>b. Stored the ERF, set the channel switch to the hop set channel, reset the channel switch to MAN, and set the FCTN switch to SQ ON.</li> <li>c. Responded in sequence to the NCS call.</li> <li>d. Reset the channel switch to MAN and the FCTN switch to LO if the member missed the ERF or heard no communications on the hop set channel.</li> <li>e. Responded in sequence to the NCS call.</li> </ul> <p>7. The net members perform the late net entry (LNE), cue, and ERF method.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed pre-mission checks for a FH cold-start.</li> <li>b. Loaded the cue frequency according to the SOI and/or the SSI.</li> <li>c. Initiated the cue call.</li> <li>d. Reported into the net.</li> <li>e. Switched to the MAN channel and conducted the cold-start net opening.</li> </ul> <p>8. The net members use proper radio procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Kept the length and the number of transmissions to a minimum.</li> <li>b. Used the lowest power setting required to communicate.</li> <li>c. Used authorized call signs and frequencies.</li> <li>d. Observed periods of radio-listening silence.</li> <li>e. Operated on a random schedule.</li> <li>f. Adhered to net discipline.</li> </ul> <p>9. The team members recognize different types of interference.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked the receiver/transmitter's (RT) signal (SIG) display when it was not transmitting. If the display was constantly or intermittently higher than 1, then the members disconnected the antenna to determine if the interference was internal or external.</li> <li>b. Initiated the ECCM for external symptoms.</li> </ul> <p>10. The team members initiate ECCM actions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Continued to operate.</li> <li>b. Did not disclose the effectiveness of the jamming in the clear.</li> <li>c. Reduced the transmission speed.</li> <li>d. Increased the transmitter power.</li> <li>e. Relocated the antenna.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Prepared and forwarded a meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder report to the supervisor in the United States message text format (USMTF).</p> <p>11. The team members extend the range of the radio station.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the OE-254 for serviceability.</li> <li>b. Installed the OE-254 antenna using the team method.</li> <li>c. Accomplished the transaction from the whip antenna to the OE-254 without unnecessary interruption of service.</li> </ul> <p>12. The retransmission team establishes a retransmission site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Installed and connected the OE-254 antennas.</li> <li>b. Performed preoperational PMCS.</li> <li>c. Loaded the CMD NET MAN frequency in radio C.</li> <li>d. Loaded the CMD NET MAN and cue frequencies in radio D.</li> <li>e. Loaded the TSK and the TEK into both radios (non-ICOM only).</li> <li>f. Loaded the hop set and the TEK into both radios (ICOM only).</li> <li>g. Cue'd the LNE using radio D.</li> <li>h. Stored the ERF into both radios.</li> <li>i. Changed radio D to RTS MAN and cue frequencies and TRS net ID.</li> <li>j. Set the FCTN switches of radios C and D to retransmit (RXMT).</li> </ul> <p>13. The team members initiate the net radio interface (NRI) call.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Called the NRI operator on the NRI hop set channel, or initiated a cue call on the NCI cue channel as required.</li> <li>b. Switched to NRI MAN channel.</li> <li>c. Established communications on the NRI hop set channel.</li> <li>d. Identified the telephone subscriber by call sign or telephone number.</li> </ul> <p>14. The team members maintain the SINCGARS radio net.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed PMCS, as required.</li> <li>b. Performed fault isolation, as required.</li> <li>c. Performed user-level maintenance, as required.</li> <li>d. Evacuated the faulty equipment, as required.</li> <li>e. Completed all of the necessary entries in the maintenance record.</li> <li>f. Reported all uncorrected deficiencies to the immediate supervisor.</li> </ul> <p>15. The NCS closes the net.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Called the net and issued closedown instructions.</li> <li>b. Received acknowledgement in the correct sequence.</li> <li>c. Acknowledged the net members.</li> <li>d. Performed after-operation PMCS.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-217-35-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Participate in the Operations Order Process (12-1-0408.05-T01A)  
 (FM 101-5) (FM 100-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is engaging in combat operations and has received a mission from higher headquarters. The battalion commander has issued planning guidance. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The personnel estimate and annex of the operation order (OPORD) are completed in the time outlined in the commander's guidance. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section prepares the personnel estimate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained the commander's restated mission.</li> <li>b. Obtained intelligence information from the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2).</li> <li>c. Obtained tactical information from the commander or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3).</li> <li>d. Obtained logistical information from the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4).</li> <li>e. Prepared the troop-preparedness situation.</li> <li>f. Analyzed and compared courses of action.</li> <li>g. Developed conclusions.</li> <li>h. Presented conclusions to the commander.</li> </ul> <p>2. The S1 section participates in the preparation process for the service-support annex.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified the battalion's task organization.</li> <li>b. Updated task-force battle rosters and personnel strength (PS) charts to reflect the new task organization.</li> <li>c. Advised the commander and staff on task-force PS.</li> <li>d. Developed estimates of injured, sick, and wounded rates.</li> <li>e. Coordinated the location of medical-support facilities and evacuation routes and procedures.</li> <li>f. Provided medical-support information to staff members in support of staff planning.</li> <li>g. Relayed tactical/operational information and command directives to medical-support units.</li> <li>h. Verified casualty data and strength information with the battalion aid station.</li> <li>i. Established requirements and procedures for strength accounting, replacements, and casualty reporting.</li> <li>j. Coordinated and designated temporary enemy prisoner of war (EPW) and civilian-detainee collection points and outlined evacuation procedures.</li> <li>k. Prepared the personnel portion of paragraph 4 (Service Support) of the OPORD.</li> <li>l. Briefed task organization and personnel portions of the OPORD.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Maintain Company Strength (12-2-0321.05-T01A)  
(FM 12-6) (FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company has resumed combat operations. Casualties have occurred and replacements are arriving. During operations, the unit may encounter separate or multiple air; Level I threat; nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC); and terrorist attacks. Casualty processing and replacement actions continue during lulls in combat operations. The task may occur in a field or military operations on urbanized terrain (MOUT) environment. A tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) is available. Digital systems are operational and providing information on the common operational picture (COP). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The personnel situation report (SITREP), which accounts for all company personnel, is reported daily or as required. Digital units send reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The headquarters (HQ) element collects strength-information reports from subordinate sections.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Logged the SITREP and other personnel information.</li> <li>b. Verified strength data.</li> <li>c. Corrected erroneous and incomplete data.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The HQs element processes information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consolidated the personnel information of subordinate elements.</li> <li>b. Determined critical shortages and cross-leveling requirements.</li> <li>c. Updated the battle roster.</li> <li>d. Prepared hasty personnel status report (PSR) strength reports.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The HQs element processes replacements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed replacements on the mission, the tactical situation, company policies and procedures, specific duties, and site or company orientation.</li> <li>b. Added soldiers' names to the battle roster.</li> <li>c. Inspected critical clothing and equipment for shortages.</li> <li>d. Coordinated the issue of needed items.</li> <li>e. Arranged the movement of replacements to the platoon of assignment.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The first sergeant (1SG) disseminates strength information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the commander on the unit's strength and replacement status.</li> <li>b. Forwarded personnel SITREP or hasty strength reports, casualty feeder reports (Department of the Army [DA] Form 1156), and witness statements (DA Form 1155) to the supporting Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section.</li> <li>c. Informed subordinate sections of projected replacements.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 5. The company commander performs strength-management functions.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed cross leveling.</li> <li>b. Verified combat-critical personnel requirements.</li> <li>c. Reviewed strength-management reports.</li> <li>d. Spot-checked strength-information processing.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Briefed superiors on the unit's strength and replacement status.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
3 ENGINEER PLT HQ

**TASK:** Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability (12-2-0338.05-T01A)  
(FM 22-51) (AR 27-1) (AR 600-15)  
(AR 608-99) (FM 21-20) (FM 22-9)  
(UCMJ)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is preparing to resume combat operations. During preparations, the unit may encounter separate or multiple air; Level 1 threat; nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC); and terrorist attacks. Preparations occur during lulls in combat operations. Digital units have functional digital systems. The task may occur in a field or military operations on urbanized terrain (MOUT) environment. The tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs) are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company follows and applies techniques to counter performance degradation and to enhance combat effectiveness. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means to maintain and inform subordinate units of the common operational picture (COP) and maintain situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander executes actions to keep soldiers informed.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued warning orders, operation orders (OPORDs), and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level.</li> <li>b. Provided soldiers with an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situations.</li> <li>c. Told the soldiers of the leaders' intentions.</li> <li>d. Spoke positively concerning the unit's mission, purpose, and abilities.</li> <li>e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit.</li> <li>f. Quelled and prevented rumors.</li> <li>g. Disseminated command information to include the availability of religious support.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The company commander or first sergeant (1SG) implements the unit's sleep plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed the unit's sleep plan.</li> <li>b. Provided safe, secure areas away from vehicles and other activities for sleep.</li> <li>c. Provided an opportunity for the maximum number of soldiers to sleep or rest where possible.</li> <li>d. Specified and provided time for leaders to sleep or rest.</li> <li>e. Adjusted the plan to the tactical situation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. All leaders implement task-rotation restructuring procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Cross-trained soldiers on critical tasks.</li> <li>b. Developed plans for the rotation of soldiers between demanding and nondemanding tasks.</li> <li>c. Assigned two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy, such as mathematical computations (duplicate efforts).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 4. All leaders implement stress-coping and stress-management techniques.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Taught soldiers relaxation techniques prior to deployment.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the unit implemented a buddy system to observe signs of stress or battle fatigue among soldiers and leaders.</li> <li>c. Ensured that soldiers used relaxation techniques when needed.</li> <li>d. Facilitated the acceptance of newly arrived soldiers into the unit.</li> <li>e. Reintegrated returned-to-duty, stressed, or battle-fatigued soldiers into the unit.</li> </ul> </li>   <li>* 5. The company commander or 1SG implements stress-treatment techniques.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed a plan to deal with mild and more serious stress or battle-fatigue cases.</li> <li>b. Assigned soldiers who showed signs of stress or battle fatigue to the performance of simpler tasks.</li> <li>c. Ensured that soldiers were supportive in speech and behavior toward soldiers suffering from stress or battle fatigue.</li> <li>d. Moved stressed or battle-fatigued soldiers (who did not show improvement after resting) to unit trains, supporting units, or medical facilities.</li> <li>e. Referred for medical evaluation or care, those soldiers who had serious signs of stress or battle fatigue or were not recuperating.</li> </ul> </li>   <li>* 6. The company command group provides morale, welfare, and recreation (MWR) support.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Implemented sports programs as the situation allowed.</li> <li>b. Provided hot rations.</li> <li>c. Coordinated postal support.</li> <li>d. Coordinated combat payments.</li> <li>e. Coordinated clothing exchange and bath support.</li> <li>f. Coordinated the issue and sale of soldier comfort, morale, and welfare items.</li> <li>g. Coordinated legal support.</li> <li>h. Advised higher headquarters on the unit's MWR status.</li> </ul> </li>   <li>* 7. All leaders maintain soldiers' fitness.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored soldiers' fitness.</li> <li>b. Conducted physical training (as the time and combat situation allowed).</li> <li>c. Implemented personal hygiene and field-sanitation procedures.</li> <li>d. Corrected problem areas.</li> <li>e. Briefed the commander on the soldiers' fitness status.</li> </ul> </li>   <li>* 8. The company commander administers the Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evaluated evidence and determined the appropriate disposition of reported violations of the UCMJ.</li> <li>b. Administered nonjudicial punishment.</li> <li>c. Forwarded charges for trial by courts-martial.</li> </ul> </li>   <li>* 9. The company commander disposes of disciplinary infractions and misconduct by other-than-judicial or nonjudicial proceedings.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Counseled soldiers for indebtedness.</li> <li>b. Counseled soldiers for nonsupport of dependents.</li> <li>c. Initiated letters of reprimand or admonition.</li> <li>d. Initiated administrative separations.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 3 ENGINEER PLT HQ  
 9 ENGINEER SQUADS

**TASK:** Maintain Platoon Strength (12-3-0001.05-T01A)  
 (FM 12-6)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Casualties have occurred and replacements are arriving. A lull in the battle has occurred. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** A personnel status report (PSR), which accounts for all platoon personnel, is provided daily or as required. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Squad members take immediate action.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed first aid on wounded soldiers.</li> <li>b. Requested medical aid, as needed.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 2. Squad leaders report the personnel status of the squad.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Accounted for all assigned or attached personnel.</li> <li>b. Prepared Department of the Army (DA) Form 1156 for killed or wounded soldiers (body under United States [US] control).</li> <li>c. Prepared DA Form 1155 for captured or missing soldiers (body not under US control).</li> <li>d. Forwarded reports and completed forms to the company command post (CP).</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant processes strength information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Recorded the situation report (SITREP) and other personnel information.</li> <li>b. Directed cross-leveling to fill critical-position openings caused by casualties.</li> <li>c. Consolidated squad personnel reports.</li> <li>d. Collected casualty feeder reports and witness statements (DA Forms 1155 and 1156).</li> <li>e. Updated the battle roster and the platoon's strength-accountability system.</li> <li>f. Determined critical-replacement requirements.</li> <li>g. Prepared the strength report.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant processes replacements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed replacements on the mission, the tactical situation, platoon policies and procedures, specific duties, and site or platoon orientation.</li> <li>b. Entered the names of soldiers onto the platoon's accountability system or battle roster.</li> <li>c. Inspected soldiers for combat-critical clothing and equipment.</li> <li>d. Arranged for the issue of missing required items of combat-critical clothing and equipment.</li> <li>e. Implemented the buddy system.</li> <li>f. Arranged for the movement of soldiers to assignments.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 5. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant reports the personnel status.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Forwarded completed DA Forms 1155 and 1156.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Transmitted the strength report and other requested personnel information.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
081-831-1005	PREVENT SHOCK	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1016	PUT ON A FIELD OR PRESSURE DRESSING	STP 21-1-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



## CHAPTER 6

### External Evaluation

6-1. General. Performance-oriented evaluations are conducted to evaluate the unit's ability to perform its mission. This chapter is a guide for preparing evaluations. Using units may modify this evaluation, based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and other considerations as deemed appropriate by the commander. Selected training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) in Chapter 5 are used for evaluation which involves the total unit and employs realistic opposing forces (OPFOR) and the use of the Multiple Integrated Laser-Engagement System (MILES). At the end of the evaluation, the commander can identify the strengths and weaknesses of his unit. These strengths and weaknesses are the basis for future training and resource allocations.

6-2. Preparing the Evaluation. The commander must standardize evaluation procedures to measure the unit's capabilities accurately. Table 6-1 is a sample evaluation scenario that contains the missions as well as the appropriate tasks necessary to develop the scenario and execute the evaluation. Figure 6-1 is a graphic representation of the scenario. Selective tailoring is required because it is not possible to evaluate every task. The following procedures are suggested for developing the evaluation:

**Table 6-1. Sample Evaluation Scenario**

Event	Action	Estimated Time Allotted	Proposed Time Frame	
1	Conduct Preevaluation Operations	Prestart time		
2	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures			
3	Issue Battalion Road-March Order	2 hours	Day 1	0200 hours
4	Conduct Tactical Road March	5 hours		0400 hours
5	Occupy Assembly Area	3 hours		0900 hours
	<u>Module 1</u>			
6	Receive Warning Order	2 hours		1200 hours
7	Support Combat Operations (Mobility)			
8	Conduct Unit Support Operations			
9	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations			
10	Conduct Administrative Operations			
11	Conduct Intelligence Operations			
	<u>Module 2</u>			
12	Conduct Unit Support Operations		Day 2	1400 hours
13	Receive Warning Order			
14	Support Combat Operations (Counter-mobility)			
15	Perform Unit Maintenance Operation			
16	Move to After-Action Review (AAR) Site and Conduct AAR			
17	End of Exercise (ENDEX)			
			Total Time:	12 hours

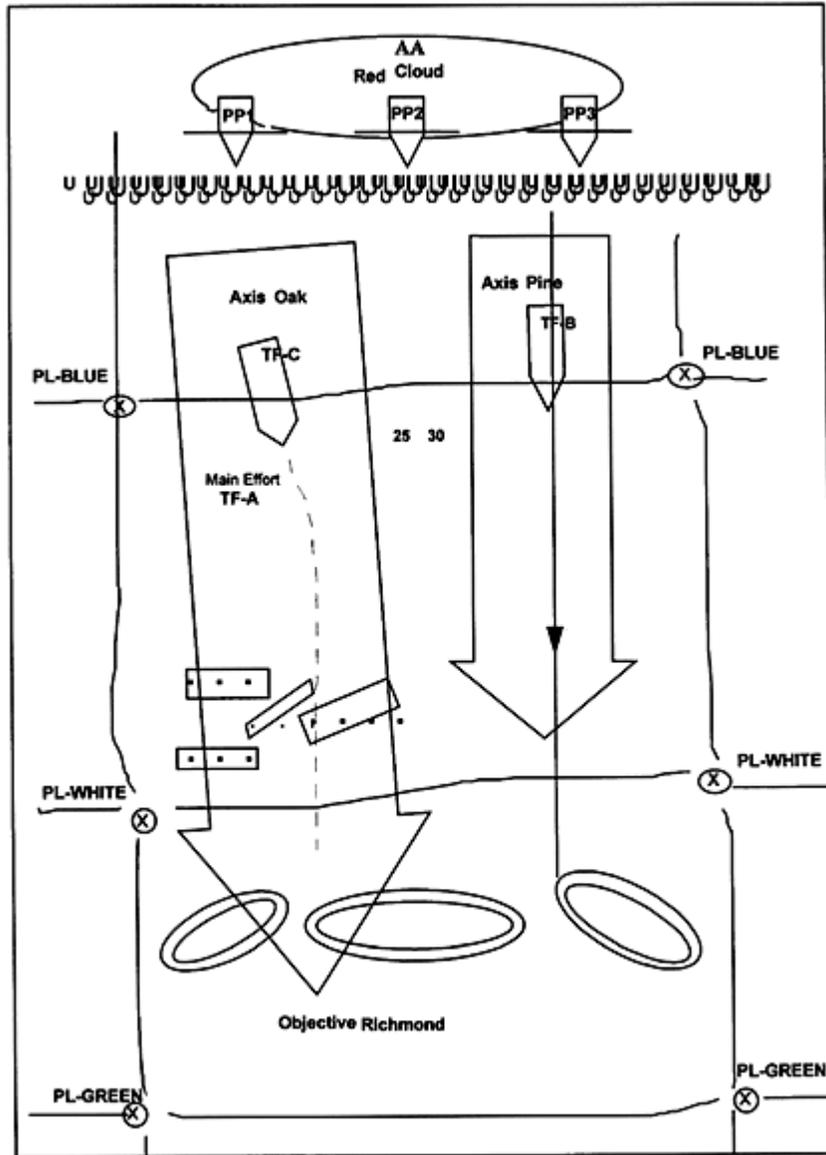


Figure 6-1. General Scenario Illustration

a. Identify the missions for evaluating each echelon or element, using Figure 2-2 in Chapter 2. Record the selected missions on the unit proficiency work sheet (UPW) (see Figure 6-2).

Unit: _____		Date: _____				Unit Overall Rating and Remarks
Number	Unit Mission/Task	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	

**NOTE:** If more space is required for remarks, use the back side of this form.

Figure 6-2. Sample UPW



6-3. Resource Requirements and Planning Considerations. Adequate training ammunition, equipment, and supplies must be forecasted and requisitioned. Table 6-2 is a consolidated list of the support requirements for this evaluation. It is based on experience with the scenario in Table 6-1. The evaluating headquarters (HQ) must prepare its own consolidated support requirements.

**Table 6-2. Sample Consolidated Requirements**

<b>CONSOLIDATED SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS FOR FTX 5-1-E0001</b>			
<b>Ammunition</b>	<b>DODIC</b>	<b>Estimated Basic Load</b>	
5.56 millimeters (mm)	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per squad automatic weapon (SAW)	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
Antitank Weapon-Effect Simulator System (ATWEES) (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulators, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolition) or 6 per squad	
<b>Demolitions (1) (Refer to the note below.)</b>			
Mine-clearing line charge (MICLIC)		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block trinitrotoluene (TNT)		50 per squad	
Modernized demolition initiator (MDI) M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI igniters		60 each platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
<b>Other Items</b>			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
<b>Class IV</b>			
Concertina wire			
Mines			
<b>MILES Equipment</b>	<b>Company</b>	<b>Evaluators</b>	<b>OPFOR</b>
Armored personnel carrier (APC)	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine-gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small-arms alignment fixture		2	
<b>NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to their use) during the field training exercise (FTX).</b>			

6-4. Selecting and Training Os/Cs. A successful evaluation depends heavily on selecting Os/Cs with the proper experience, training them to fulfill their responsibilities, and supervising them throughout the evaluation.

a. A six-person O/C team should be used to perform an external evaluation of the battalion. The team should be made up of the following personnel:

- (1) Senior O/C.
- (2) Staff O/C.
- (3) Operations O/C.
- (4) Administration O/C.
- (5) Logistics O/C.
- (6) Nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) O/C.

b. A thorough knowledge of the battalion's mission, organization, equipment, and doctrine is required by the Os/Cs. They must understand the overall operation of the battalion and how it is integrated into and supports force-projection operations. Team members must have a working knowledge of the common individual and collective tasks in areas such as local-defense convoy procedures, communications, and NBC. One member of the team must have detailed expertise in the NBC and local-defense, common-task areas. Os/Cs should be equal in grade to the person in charge of the element they are evaluating, and they should have previous experience in the position being evaluated. All team members must be able to make objective evaluations, function effectively as a team member, and state their findings in writing and briefings.

c. O/C training focuses on providing Os/Cs with a general understanding of the overall evaluation, providing each O/C with a detailed understanding of the specific duties and responsibilities, and building a spirit of teamwork. O/C training includes--

- (1) The overall evaluation design, general scenario, master-events list, and the specific evaluation purposes and objectives.
- (2) The battalion mission-essential task list (METL) and its linkage to the T&EOs and other materials contained in this Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP) mission training plan (MTP).
- (3) The O/C team composition and the general duties and responsibilities of each team member.
- (4) The detailed responsibilities of individual team members, with special emphasis on the master-events list items that are their responsibility. This includes--
  - (a) A review of written instructions and materials contained in the Os/Cs folders.
  - (b) A detailed reconnaissance of the area used for the evaluation.
  - (c) The O/C communications and command and control (C2) systems.
  - (d) Safety procedures.
  - (e) Evaluation data-collection operation plan (OPLAN) and procedures.
  - (f) AAR procedures and techniques.

(5) A talk-through of the entire evaluation, including war-gaming all items on the master-events list in order of their occurrence, and a review of each team member's responsibilities and anticipated problems.

d. The senior O/C supervises the operation of the team. He provides the team leadership, focuses his efforts on ensuring that the Os/Cs fulfill their responsibilities and adhere to the evaluation plan, resolves problems, synchronizes the efforts of the team members, ensures close coordination among team members, holds periodic team coordination meetings, plans and orchestrates the battalion's AAR, and conducts specific evaluation-team AARs.

6-5. Selecting and Training OPFOR. The OPFOR support for an external evaluation of the battalion is limited to two squads of dismounted infantry and two to five individuals who serve as enemy agents. Although OPFOR support is only used for some tasks, proper training and employment of this force is important to ensure a proper assessment of the battalion's capabilities.

a. The OPFOR commander should be a company grade officer or a senior noncommissioned officer (NCO) who is well trained in OPFOR tactics and operations. In addition to the duties and responsibilities in leading various OPFOR elements, the OPFOR commander serves as a part-time member of the O/C team. In order to fulfill O/C responsibilities, the OPFOR commander must participate in O/C planning and training activities. He must be present during AARs.

b. OPFOR elements are trained, organized, and equipped to operate in a manner that depicts threat forces as realistically as possible. Their training includes--

- (1) Threat tactics and rules for engagement.
- (2) OPFOR missions and responsibilities.
- (3) OPFOR tasks and standards.
- (4) Threat weapons and equipment, if available.
- (5) C2.
- (6) Safety.

6-6. Conducting the Evaluation. The senior O/C has overall responsibility for conducting the evaluation. He orchestrates the overall evaluation and the support provided by the various individuals and elements which are specially selected and trained to fulfill designated functions and responsibilities.

a. O/Cs must be free to observe, report, and record the actions of the battalion.

b. The HQ two echelons above the battalion being evaluated should select and train the control element for the evaluation. It issues orders, receives reports, provides feeder information, and controls the OPFOR.

c. All exercise participants and supporting personnel must ensure that every facet of the evaluation is conducted in a safe manner. Personnel observing unsafe conditions must take prompt action to halt them and must advise their superiors of the situation.

6-7. Recording External Evaluation Information.

a. The senior O/C is responsible for implementing the evaluation scoring system. Although the final evaluation is made up by the senior O/C, the full team participates in this process. Their reports reflect the overall ability of the combat engineer battalion to accomplish its wartime missions.

b. The evaluation scoring system is based on an evaluation of the unit's performance of each mission-essential task and any other collective task contained in the overall evaluation plan. Use the following four steps for the evaluation:

(1) Identify the ARTEP MTP T&EOs which correspond to each of the evaluation plan tasks.

(2) Use T&EO standards to evaluate the unit's performances of the tasks. This is done for each evaluation plan task.

(3) Record on the T&EO a GO for each performance measure performed to standard and a NO-GO for each performance measure not performed to standard.

(4) Record the unit's overall capability to perform the task by using GO/NO-GO information recorded on each T&EO. Use the following definitions as guidance in making this determination:

(a) GO - The unit successfully accomplished the task or performance measure to standards.

(b) NO-GO - The unit did not accomplish the task or performance measure to standard.

c. Use other locally designed reports that are approved by the senior O/C and prescribed in the evaluation plan to collect the evaluation information. These reports assist the team in recording the information concerning the unit's capability to perform its wartime mission according to the established standards. This information will assist the senior O/C to determine the unit's overall final rating. The following reports can be used to collect the information:

(1) Unit data sheet (Figure 6-4). This report records personnel and equipment status information.

(2) Environmental data sheet (Figure 6-5). This report records information concerning weather and terrain conditions present during the evaluation period.

(3) Personnel- and equipment-loss report (Figure 6-6). This report records information concerning battalion personnel and equipment losses during OPFOR engagements.

<b>UNIT DATA SHEET</b>						
1. Unit Designation:				Date:		
2. Unit Leaders: (Circle the most correct answer.)						
Position	Rank	Time in Unit (Months)				
Commander	LTC/MAJ	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Executive officer	MAJ/CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Bn S3	MAJ/CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Bn S2	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Bn S1	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Bn S4	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Bn maintenance officer	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
A Company CDR	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
B Company CDR	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
C Company CDR	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
3. Unit Strength (excluding leaders):						
4. Equipment Shortages (major items):						
5. Comments:						
O/C Signature:						

Figure 6-4. Sample Unit Data Sheet

<b>ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET</b>						
Exercise Number and Description:						
Date/Time Exercise Started:						
Date/Time Exercise Ended:						
1. Weather Conditions: (Circle the appropriate description.)						
Clear	Partly Cloudy	Cloudy	Hazy	Rain	Snow	Fog
Other:						
Temperature:						
2. Ground Conditions: (Circle the appropriate description.)						
Dry	Wet	Ice	Snow			
Other:						
3. Light Conditions: (Circle the appropriate description.)						
Day	Night					
Moon phase	1/4	1/2	3/4	Full		
Average Range of Visibility Due to Terrain:						
4. Terrain: (Circle appropriate description.)						
Flat	Rolling	Mountains	Jungle	Desert	Urban	Artic
Other:						
Top Soil:	Sandy	Rocky	Clay	Other:		
Average Range of Visibility Due to Terrain:						
5. Remarks:						

**Figure 6-5. Sample Environmental Data Sheet**



b. Key steps in the AAR process are--

(1) Planning. Planning for AARs is started in the exercise preparation activities long before the start of the action evaluation. AARs are integrated into the general scenario at logical breakpoints and into the detailed evaluation scenario which is developed subsequently. Qualified Os/Cs are selected and trained in the AAR process as part of O/C training. This phase also includes the identification of potential AAR sites and the requisition of equipment and supplies needed to conduct the AAR.

(2) Preparation. AAR preparation starts with the beginning of the actual evaluation. In addition to observing the HQ engineer battalion performing its critical tasks, this phase includes the review of the training objectives, orders, and doctrine. Final AAR sites selection is completed and times and attendance are established. AAR information is gathered from applicable Os/Cs and battalion personnel. The AAR is organized and rehearsed.

(3) Conduct. AARs are conducted at logical breakpoints in the exercise and at the end of the evaluation. When AAR participants have assembled, the AAR begins with the senior O/C introducing the session with a statement of the AAR's purpose, the establishment of the AAR's ground rules and procedures, and a restatement of the training and evaluation objectives. Guidelines for a successful AAR include--

(a) AARs are not critiques, but are professional discussions of training events.

(b) The senior O/C guides the discussion in a manner that ensures that the participants discuss the lessons openly.

(c) Dialogue is encouraged among Os/Cs and battalion personnel.

(d) All individuals who participated in the evaluation are present for the AAR, if possible. As a minimum, every unit or element that participates in the exercise is represented.

(e) Participants discuss not only what happened, but also how it happened and how it could have been done better.

(f) Participants review the sequence of the events associated with the hazards and the risk assessment made before the exercise. As a minimum, the review should address hazards that presented themselves (but were not identified) and each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it could be avoided in the future.

(g) Events which were not directly related to the major events are not examined.

(h) Participants do not offer self-serving excuses for inappropriate actions.

(i) The AAR's end result is that soldiers and leaders, through discovery learning, gain a better understanding of their individual and collective strengths and weaknesses and become more proficient in training for and performing their critical tasks.

**NOTE:** Reference materials for conducting an AAR are Training Circular (TC) 25-6, TC 25-20, and Field Manual (FM) 25-101.

**APPENDIX A - EXERCISE OPERATION ORDER (OPORD)**

For use of the OPORD refer to the exercise outlined in Chapter 4 and to Figure A-1.

<b>OPERATION ORDER</b>
<p>1. SITUATION.</p> <p>a. Enemy Forces. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn deep to the rear. He being reinforced with motorized rifle forces and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. Latest intelligence summaries (INTSUMs) indicate that the enemy may have a platoon-size combat outpost in the battalion sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.</p> <p>b. Friendly Forces. 1st Brigade conducts a passage of lines to seize Objective Richmond. On order, 1st Brigade continues the attack forward of phase line (PL) Green.</p> <p>(1) Missions of units on left and right flanks, as required.</p> <p>(2) Supporting engineer unit missions, as required.</p> <p>(3) Supporting fires: 2nd Battalion, 61st Field Artillery (FA), is in direct support.</p> <p>2. MISSION. The task force (TF) conducts a passage of lines and attacks to seize and secure Objective Richmond no later than 090600Z. On order, the TF prepares to continue movement forward of PL Green.</p> <p>3. EXECUTION.</p> <p>a. Concept of the Operation: See overlay developed by the trainer in the field.</p> <p>(1) Maneuver. TF 1-25 departs assembly area (AA) Red Cloud with two company teams abreast and two teams following. Team A leads on Axis Oak and is the main attack. Team B leads on Axis Pine and is supporting the attack. Teams C and D follow on Axis Oak and Pine respectively. The commander's intent is to gain contact with the enemy and locate and fix the enemy's main body so that the brigade can conduct envelopments to destroy the enemy. It is necessary to destroy the enemies combat outposts. The unit must quickly reorganize and continue movement until the unit finds the main body. The company team that makes initial contact will attempt to fight through and destroy the enemy. If the unit cannot, they will provide a base of fire for maneuver with the remaining TF. The unit will continue movement to PL Green if no contact is gained. The unit will continue movement past PL Green on order.</p> <p>(2) Fire support. The priority of fires is to Team A initially and then to the team that is in contact (once contact is made).</p> <p>(3) Mines, obstacles, and fortifications. Critical choke points and identified obstacles are shown on the obstacle overlay.</p> <p>b. Subunit Missions (as required).</p> <p>c. Engineer. Priority of support is to the two lead teams. On order, conduct breaching operations in support of the team in contact. Be prepared to support hasty defense on order.</p> <p>d. Coordinating Instructions.</p> <p>(1) Report all enemy contact.</p>

- (2) Report all enemy obstacles.
- (3) Report crossing of the PLs.
- (4) Additional information, as required.
- 4. SERVICE AND SUPPORT. Per brigade standing operating procedure (SOP).
- 5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
  - a. Command.
  - b. Signal.
    - (1) Current signal operating instructions (SOI).
    - (2) Radio listening silence until initial contact is made with the enemy.

**Figure A-1. OPORD**

**APPENDIX B - CONVERSION FACTORS (UNITED STATES [US] AND METRIC)****Table B-1. Metric Conversion Chart**

<b>US Units</b>	<b>Multiplied By</b>	<b>Equals Metric Units</b>
<b>Length</b>		
Feet	0.30480	Meters
Inches	2.54000	Centimeters
Inches	0.02540	Meters
Inches	25.40010	Millimeters
Miles (statute)	1.60930	Kilometers
Miles per hour	0.0447	Meters per second
Yards	0.91400	Meters
<b>Volume</b>		
Cubic feet	0.02830	Cubic meters
Cubic yards	0.76460	Cubic meters
<b>Weight</b>		
Pounds	453.59000	Grams
Pounds	0.45359	Kilograms
<b>Length</b>		
Centimeters	0.39370	Inches
Meters per second	2.23700	Miles per hour
Millimeters	0.03937	Inches
Kilometers	0.62137	Miles (statute)
Meters	3.28080	Feet
Meters	39.37000	Inches
Meters	1.09360	Yards
<b>Volume</b>		
Cubic meters	35.31440	Cubic feet
Cubic meters	1.30790	Cubic yards
<b>Weight</b>		
Kilograms	2.20460	Pounds



## GLOSSARY

### **Section I** **Abbreviations**

<b>CONEX</b>	container express
<b>O.</b>	For Official Use Only; object above station
<b>?</b>	status unknown
<b>1LT</b>	first lieutenant
<b>1SG</b>	first sergeant
<b>5 Ss and T</b>	search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag
<b>AA</b>	avenue of approach; assembly area
<b>AAR</b>	after-action review
<b>ABCS</b>	Army Battle Command System
<b>AC</b>	active component
<b>ACR</b>	armored cavalry regiment
<b>ADA</b>	air defense artillery
<b>ADC</b>	area damage control
<b>AMC</b>	air mission commander
<b>AO</b>	area of operations
<b>AP</b>	antipersonnel
<b>APC</b>	armored personnel carrier
<b>AR</b>	Army regulation; armor
<b>ARTEP</b>	Army Training and Evaluation Program
<b>AT</b>	antiterrorism; antitank
<b>ATTN</b>	attention
<b>ATWESS</b>	antitank weapon-effect signature simulator
<b>BDE</b>	brigade, backward difference in elevation
<b>BF</b>	board feet; battle fatigue
<b>BLTM</b>	battalion-level training model

<b>BN</b>	battalion
<b>BOM</b>	bill of materials
<b>BOS</b>	Battlefield Operating Systems
<b>BP</b>	battle position
<b>C&amp;RS</b>	calibration and repair support
<b>C2</b>	command and control
<b>C2SRS</b>	Command and Control Strength Reporting System
<b>CALFEX</b>	combined-arms live-fire exercise
<b>CAS</b>	casualty
<b>CATS</b>	Combined-Arms Training Strategy
<b>CCIR</b>	commander's critical-information requirement
<b>CDM</b>	chemical downwind message
<b>CDR</b>	commander
<b>cfs</b>	cubic feet per second
<b>CFX</b>	command-field exercise
<b>CHS</b>	combat health support
<b>CMP</b>	course management plan; corrugated metal pipe
<b>CO</b>	commissioned officer; carbon monoxide; commanding officer; company; commander
<b>COA</b>	course of action
<b>COMEX</b>	communications exercise
<b>COMSEC</b>	communications security
<b>CONUS</b>	continental United States
<b>COP</b>	common operational picture
<b>CP</b>	command post
<b>CPR</b>	cardiovascular pulmonary resuscitation
<b>CPT</b>	captain
<b>CPX</b>	command-post exercise
<b>CRYPTO</b>	cryptographic

<b>CS</b>	combat support; Costa Rica
<b>CSS</b>	combat-service support
<b>DA</b>	Department of the Army; Denmark; direct action
<b>DA Form</b>	Department of the Army Form
<b>DD</b>	Department of Defense
<b>demo</b>	demolition
<b>DENTAC</b>	dental activity
<b>DEUCE</b>	deployable universal combat earthmover
<b>DMOS</b>	duty military occupational specialty
<b>DOD</b>	Department of Defense
<b>DODIC</b>	Department of Defense identification code
<b>DRS</b>	direct religious support; Digital Reconnaissance System
<b>DS2</b>	decontaminating solution #2
<b>DTSS</b>	Digital Topographic Support System
<b>EA</b>	each; engagement area
<b>ECB</b>	Echelons Corps and Below
<b>ECCM</b>	electronic counter-countermeasures
<b>EEFI</b>	essential elements of friendly information
<b>EGA</b>	extended graphics adapter; electronically-generated form
<b>ENDEX</b>	end of exercise
<b>EOD</b>	explosive ordnance disposal
<b>EPW</b>	enemy prisoner of war
<b>ERF</b>	electronic remote fill; electronic counter-countermeasures remote fill
<b>ERP</b>	engineer regulating point; effective radiated power; emitter receiver processor; en route reporting points; end-route rally point; enhanced radiation projectile
<b>EW</b>	electronic warfare
<b>FASCAM</b>	family of scatterable mines
<b>FBCB2</b>	Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below

<b>FCTN</b>	function
<b>FEBA</b>	forward edge of the battle area
<b>FH</b>	field hospital; frequency hopping
<b>FIST</b>	fire support team
<b>FLAGS</b>	favorable personnel actions
<b>FM</b>	field manual; frequency modulated/modulation
<b>FO</b>	forward observer
<b>FPF</b>	final protective fire
<b>FPL</b>	final protective line
<b>FRAGO</b>	fragmentary order
<b>FS</b>	fire support; Fort Sill; foresight
<b>FSO</b>	fire support officer
<b>FST</b>	field-sanitation team
<b>FTX</b>	field training exercise
<b>G1</b>	Assistant Chief of Staff, G1 (Personnel)
<b>GRREG</b>	graves registration
<b>GSR</b>	general support-reinforcing; ground surveillance radar
<b>GTA</b>	graphic training aid
<b>HEAT</b>	high-explosive antitank
<b>HHC</b>	headquarters and headquarters company
<b>HMEE</b>	high-mobility engineer escalator
<b>HQ</b>	headquarters
<b>IAW</b>	In Accordance With
<b>IEW</b>	intelligence and electronic warfare
<b>INTSUM</b>	intelligence summary
<b>IR</b>	infrared; intelligence requirements
<b>ITR</b>	independent tank regiment
<b>KIA</b>	killed in action

<b>kph</b>	kilometers per hour
<b>LC</b>	line of crossing; light case
<b>LCE</b>	load carrying equipment
<b>LD</b>	line of departure
<b>LNE</b>	late net entry
<b>LOG PAC</b>	logistics package
<b>LOI</b>	letter of instruction
<b>LRA</b>	local reproduction authorized
<b>LTC</b>	lieutenant colonel
<b>LZ</b>	landing zone
<b>MACOM</b>	major Army command
<b>MAJ</b>	major
<b>MAN</b>	manual
<b>MAPEX</b>	map exercise
<b>MARKS</b>	Modern Army Record Keeping System
<b>MCS</b>	Maneuver Control System
<b>MCSR</b>	material-condition status report
<b>MDI</b>	modernized demolition initiator
<b>MECH</b>	mechanized
<b>MEDDAC</b>	medical department activity
<b>MEDEVAC</b>	medical evacuation
<b>METL</b>	mission-essential task list
<b>METT-T</b>	mission, enemy, terrain, troops, and time available (Army); mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, and time available (USMC)
<b>METT-TC</b>	mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations
<b>MHE</b>	materials handling equipment
<b>MICLIC</b>	mine-clearing line charge

<b>MIJI</b>	meaconing, interference, jamming, and intrusion
<b>MILES</b>	Multiple Integrated Laser-Engagement System
<b>MLC</b>	military load classification; military load class
<b>MM</b>	millimeter
<b>MO</b>	Missouri; monthly
<b>MOOTW</b>	military operations other than war
<b>MOPMS</b>	Modular-Pack Mine System
<b>MOPP</b>	mission-oriented protection posture
<b>MORTREP</b>	mortar bombing report
<b>MOS</b>	military occupational specialty
<b>MOUT</b>	military operations on urbanized terrain
<b>MP</b>	military police
<b>mps</b>	meters per second
<b>MQS</b>	military qualification standards
<b>MRE</b>	meal, ready to eat
<b>MSR</b>	main supply route
<b>MSRT</b>	mobile subscriber radiotelephone terminal
<b>MTF</b>	medical treatment facility
<b>MTP</b>	mission training plan; MOS training plan
<b>MWR</b>	morale, welfare, and recreation
<b>NBC</b>	nuclear, biological, chemical
<b>NCO</b>	noncommissioned officer
<b>NCOIC</b>	noncommissioned officer in charge
<b>NCS</b>	net control station
<b>NG</b>	National Guard
<b>NMCS</b>	non-mission capable supply
<b>NO.</b>	number
<b>non-ICOM</b>	nonintegrated communications security

<b>NRI</b>	net radio interface
<b>NSN</b>	national stock number; nonstandard number
<b>O/C</b>	observer/controller
<b>OBM</b>	outboard motor
<b>OBSDOC</b>	obstacle document
<b>OCOKA</b>	observation, concealment, obstacles, key terrain, and avenue of approach (Army)
<b>OEG</b>	operation exposure guide; operational-exposure guidance
<b>OIC</b>	officer in charge
<b>OP</b>	observation post
<b>OPFOR</b>	opposing forces
<b>OPLAN</b>	operation plan
<b>OPORD</b>	operation order
<b>OPSEC</b>	operations security
<b>OPTEMPO</b>	operational tempo
<b>OR</b>	operational readiness
<b>P</b>	pass; passed; barometric pressure; mean radius of curvature
<b>PAC</b>	Personnel and Administration Center
<b>PAM</b>	pamphlet
<b>PCC</b>	precombat check
<b>PCI</b>	photo-coverage indexes; precombat inspection
<b>PDDE</b>	power-driven decontamination equipment
<b>PIR</b>	priority intelligence requirements
<b>PL</b>	phase line; Poland
<b>PM</b>	provost marshal; program manager; preventive maintenance
<b>PMCS</b>	preventive-maintenance checks and services
<b>PMOS</b>	primary military occupational specialty
<b>POL</b>	petroleum, oils, and lubricants
<b>POM</b>	preparation for oversea movement; Program Objective Memorandum

<b>POS/NAV</b>	position/navigation
<b>POV</b>	privately owned vehicle
<b>PRR</b>	personnel requirements report
<b>PS</b>	personnel strength; personnel status
<b>PSC</b>	personnel service company
<b>PSG</b>	Platoon Sergeant
<b>PSNCO</b>	personnel staff noncommissioned officer
<b>PSR</b>	Personnel Status Report
<b>PT</b>	physical training; point of tangency
<b>PVNTMED</b>	preventive medicine
<b>PZ</b>	pickup zone
<b>R&amp;S</b>	Reconnaissance and Security
<b>RATELO</b>	radiotelephone operator
<b>RATT</b>	radio teletypewriter
<b>RB</b>	Roller beam is used to launch SS bridge; rubber boat
<b>RC</b>	reserve component
<b>RECON</b>	reconnaissance
<b>reg</b>	Regiment; regulation; register
<b>RES</b>	radiation exposure status
<b>RFL</b>	restrictive fire line
<b>RP</b>	Republic of Philippines; release point; rally point
<b>RT</b>	radius of target.
<b>RTD</b>	return to duty
<b>RXMT</b>	retransmit
<b>S1</b>	Adjutant (US Army)
<b>S2</b>	Intelligence Officer (US Army)
<b>S3</b>	Operations and Training Officer (US Army)
<b>S4</b>	Supply Officer (US Army)

<b>SA</b>	semiannually; situational awareness
<b>SALUTE</b>	size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment
<b>SATRAN</b>	satellite transmission
<b>SATS</b>	Standard Army Training Systems
<b>SAW</b>	squad automatic weapon
<b>SB</b>	Supply Bulletin; switchboard
<b>SCATMINE</b>	scatterable mine
<b>SCPE</b>	simplified collective-protection equipment
<b>SHELREP</b>	shelling report
<b>SHORAD</b>	shore-range air defense
<b>SHTU</b>	simplified handheld terminal unit
<b>SIDPERS</b>	Standard Installation/Division Personnel System
<b>SIG</b>	signal
<b>SINGARS</b>	single-channel ground and airborne radio system
<b>SITREP</b>	situation report
<b>SJA</b>	Staff Judge Advocate
<b>SM</b>	soldier's manual
<b>SMCT</b>	soldier's manual of common tasks
<b>SOEO</b>	scheme of engineer operations
<b>SOI</b>	signal operation instructions
<b>SOP</b>	standing operating procedures
<b>SP</b>	start point; strongpoint; self-propelled; Spain
<b>SPOTREP</b>	spot report
<b>SQ</b>	squelch
<b>SSI</b>	standing signal instructions
<b>STANAG</b>	Standardization Agreement
<b>STB</b>	super tropical bleach
<b>STP</b>	soldier's training publication

<b>STRAC</b>	standards in training commission
<b>STX</b>	situational-training exercise
<b>T</b>	trained; slab thickness; deck thickness; crown thickness; geodetic azimuth; grid azimuth; slope distance; telescope above station
<b>T&amp;EO</b>	training and evaluation outline
<b>TACCS</b>	Tactical Army Combat-Service-Support (CSS) Computer System
<b>TACSOP</b>	tactical standing operating procedure
<b>TAMMS</b>	The Army Maintenance Management System
<b>TC</b>	technical coordinator; training circular; tank commander
<b>TEK</b>	traffic encryption key
<b>TEWT</b>	tactical exercise without troops
<b>TF</b>	task force
<b>TG</b>	trainer's guide
<b>TM</b>	technical manual
<b>TMDE</b>	test measurement and diagnostic equipment
<b>TNT</b>	trinitrotoluene
<b>TOC</b>	tactical operations center
<b>TOE</b>	table(s) of organization and equipment
<b>TRADOC</b>	United States Army Training and Doctrine Command
<b>TRP</b>	target reference point
<b>TRTS</b>	tactical records traffic system
<b>TSEC</b>	transmission security
<b>TSK</b>	transmission security key
<b>TSO</b>	training standards officer
<b>TSOP</b>	tactical standing operating procedure
<b>U</b>	unclassified; up; untrained
<b>UAV</b>	unmanned aerial vehicle
<b>UCMJ</b>	Uniform Code of Military Justice

<b>UN</b>	United Nations
<b>UPW</b>	unit proficiency worksheet
<b>US</b>	United States
<b>USA</b>	United States of America; United States Army
<b>USAREUR</b>	United States Army, Europe
<b>USMTF</b>	United States message text format
<b>UXO</b>	unexploded explosive ordnance
<b>VA</b>	volt-ampere; Virginia; vertical angle
<b>WCS</b>	weapon-control status; weapon control station
<b>WESTCOM</b>	United States Army, Western Command
<b>WIA</b>	wounded in action
<b>WO</b>	warrant officer; warning order
<b>XO</b>	executive officer

## **Section II**

### **Terms**

#### **Class IV**

Construction materials, including installed equipment and all fortification and obstacle materials.

#### **Class V**

Ammunition of all types, including chemical, bombs, explosives, mines, fuzes, detonators, pyrotechnics, missiles, rockets, propellants, and other associate items.

#### **Claymore**

M18A1 antipersonnel mine

#### **Cue**

(1) A word, situation, or other signal for action. An initiating cue is a signal to begin performing a task or task performance step. An internal cue is a signal to go from one element of a task to another. A terminating cue indicates task completion. (2) Used to contact an FH radio net when you are not an active member of that net. Cue can be used if you are operating in SC and wish to contact an FH net.

#### **Defilade**

A fighting position offering cover and concealment to its occupant.

#### **Emplace**

To put in place or position.

#### **Field Manual (FM)**

A DA publication that contains doctrine that prescribes how the Army and its organizations function on the battlefield in terms of missions, organizations, personnel, and equipment. The level of detail should facilitate an understanding of "what" and "how" for commanders and staffs to execute their missions and tasks. The FM may also be used to publish selected alliance doctrinal publications that are not readily integrated into other doctrinal literature.

**Final protective fire (FPF)**

An immediately available prearranged barrier of fire designed to impede enemy movement across defensive lines or areas.

**Ford**

A shallow part in a body of water where the bottom permits the passage of personnel or vehicles.

**FRAGO (fragmentary order)**

An abbreviated form of an operation order (usually issued on a day-to-day basis) that eliminates the need for restating information contained in a basic operation order.

**Military occupational specialty (MOS)**

A term used to identify a group of duty positions so closely related that they are interchangeable among soldiers so classified at any skill level.

**NBC 1 Report**

Observer's Initial Report used by the observing unit to give basic initial and follow-up data about an NBC attack. It is sent by platoons and companies to battalion headquarters or by designated observers to division NBC Center (NBCC).

**NBC 4 Report**

Monitoring and Survey Report used to report NBC hazards detected by a unit through monitoring, survey, or reconnaissance. This report is prepared and submitted by company-level organizations.

**NBC 5 Report**

Actual Contaminated Areas Report. Once the NBC reports are posted on the situation map, an NBC 5 report showing the contaminated area is prepared by the division. The preferred method of dissemination is by overlay.

**OPORD (operation order)**

A directive issued by a commander to subordinate commanders for the purpose of effecting the coordinated execution of a plan of action.

**pace**

A full 30-inch step as used when marching (1.3 paces = 1 meter).

**Parapet**

A wall, rampart, or elevation of earth or stone to protect soldiers.

**Release point**

A well-defined point on a route at which the elements composing a column return under the authority of their respective commanders. Each element continues its movement toward its own appropriate destination.

**Sabot**

A lightweight carrier in which a subcaliber projectile is centered to permit firing the projectile in a larger caliber weapon. The carrier fills the bore of the weapon from which the projectile is fired; it is normally discarded a short distance from the muzzle.

**Situation report (SITREP)**

A report giving the situation in the area of the reporting unit or formation.

**SOP (standing operating procedures)**

A set of instructions covering those features of operations that lend themselves to a definite or standardized procedure without loss of effectiveness. The procedure is applicable unless ordered otherwise.

**Threat Level I**

1. Enemy agent activity. Missions include espionage, interdiction, and subversion. 2. Sabotage by enemy sympathizers. Missions include arson, assassination, sabotage, theft of supplies and material, and political unrest. 3. Terrorism. Actions that instill fear by violence or threats of violence to obtain political, religious, or ideological goals.

**Turret defilade**

A fighting position, usually for a tank, which allows the entire tank cover and concealment.

**WADI**

gully, ravine



## REFERENCES

### Army Regulations

AR 220-10	Preparation for Oversea Movement of Units (POM). 15 June 1973.
AR 27-1	Legal Services, Judge Advocate Legal Services. (This item is included on EM 0001) 3 February 1995.
AR 30-1	The Army Food Service Program. 1 January 1985.
AR 380-5	Department of the Army Information Security Program. (This item is included on EM 0001) 25 February 1988.
AR 385-10	The Army Safety Program. (This item is included on EM 0001) 23 May 1988.
AR 530-1	Operations Security (OPSEC). 3 March 1995.
AR 600-15	Indebtedness of Military Personnel. 14 March 1986.
AR 600-38	Meal Card Management System. 11 March 1988.
AR 600-8	Military Personnel Management. 1 October 1989.
AR 600-8-1	Army Casualty Operations/Assistance/Insurance. (This item is included on EM 0001) 20 October 1994.
AR 600-8-14	Identification Cards for Members of the Uniformed Services, Their Family Members, and Other Eligible Personnel. 1 March 1998.
AR 600-8-2	Suspension of Favorable Personnel Actions (FLAGS). (This item is included on EM 0001) 30 October 1987.
AR 600-8-8	The Total Army Sponsorship Program. (This item is included on EM 0001) 1 July 1993.
AR 608-99	Family Support, Child Custody, and Paternity. 1 November 1994.
AR 710-2	Inventory Management Supply Policy Below the Wholesale Level. 31 October 1997.

### Department of Army Forms

DA FORM 1155	Witness Statement on Individual. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1156	Casualty Feeder Report. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1594	Daily Staff Journal or Duty Officer's Log. 1 November 1962.
DA FORM 1971-1-R	Radiological Data Sheet-Route or Course Leg Technique (Ground and Aerial Survey) (LRA). September 1994.
DA FORM 1971-R	Radiological Data Sheet-Monitoring and Point Technique (LRA). September 1994.

### Department of Army Pamphlets

DA PAM 710-2-1	Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures)(Standalone Pub). (This item is included on EM 0001) 31 December 1997. 31 December 1997
----------------	---

### Field Manuals

FM 100-5	Operations. 14 June 1993.
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997.
FM 10-23	Basic Doctrine for Field Feeding and Class I Operations Management. 18 April 1996.
FM 10-64	Mortuary Affairs Operations 16 February 1999
FM 1-100	Army Aviation Operations. 21 February 1997.
FM 12-6	Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994
FM 19-30	Physical Security. To be Published Within Six Months.

FM 19-40 Enemy Prisoners of War, Civilian Internees and Detained Persons. 27 February 1976.

FM 20-3 Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999.

FM 20-32 Mine/Countermine Operations. 28 May 1998

FM 21-10 Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000.

FM 21-11 First Aid for Soldiers. 27 October 1988

FM 21-16 Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) Procedures. 30 August 1994.

FM 21-60 Visual Signals. 30 September 1987.

FM 21-75 Combat Skills of the Soldier. 30 August 1984

FM 22-51 Leaders` Manual for Combat Stress Control 29 September 1994

FM 22-9 Soldier Performance in Continuous Operations. 12 December 1991.

FM 24-1 Signal Support in the Air-Land Battle. 15 October 1990.

FM 24-17 Tactical Records Traffic System (TRTS). 17 September 1991.

FM 24-18 Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987.

FM 24-19 Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991

FM 24-33 Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures. 17 July 1990.

FM 24-35 (O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI". 26 October 1990

FM 24-35-1 (O) Signal Supplemental Instructions. 1 October 1990

FM 3-100 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals. 8 May 1996.

FM 3-11 Flame, Riot Control Agents and Herbicide Operations. 19 August 1996.

FM 3-19 NBC Reconnaissance. 19 November 1993.

FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992.

FM 3-34.2 Combined-Arms Breaching Operations. 31 August 2000

FM 3-4 NBC Protection. 29 May 1992.

FM 34-60 Counterintelligence. 3 October 1995.

FM 3-5 NBC Decontamination. 28 July 2000.

FM 3-50 Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990.

FM 3-50-1 Smoke Unit Operations (FM to be Published in the Future). 6 September 1982.

FM 43-5 Unit Maintenance Operations. 28 September 1988.

FM 44-100 US Army Air and Missile Defense Operations. 15 June 2000.

FM 44-64 SHORAD Battalion and Battery Operations. 5 June 1997.

FM 44-8 Combined Arms for the Air Defense. 1 June 1999.

FM 44-80 Visual Aircraft Recognition. 30 September 1996.

FM 5-10 Combat Engineer Platoon. 3 October 1995.

FM 5-100 Engineer Operations. 27 February 1996.

FM 5-103 Survivability. 10 June 1985.

FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance. 5 May 1998.

FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions. 30 July 1998

FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999

FM 5-430-00-1 Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Road Design. 26 August 1994.

FM 5-430-00-2 Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Airfield and Heliport Design. 29 September 1994.

FM 55-30 Army Motor Transport Units and Operations. 27 June 1997

FM 5-71-2 Armored Task-Force Engineer Combat Operations. 28 June 1996.

FM 7-10 The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990.

FM 71-1	Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team. 26 January 1998
FM 7-7	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985.
FM 7-7J	Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley). 7 May 1993.
FM 7-8	Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992.
FM 8-10	Health Service Support in a Theater of Operations. 1 March 1991.
FM 8-10-1	The Medical Company Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 29 December 1994
FM 8-10-6	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques and Procedures. 14 April 00.
FM 8-285	Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Injuries. 22 December 1995.
FM 8-55	Planning for Health Service Support. 9 September 1994.
FM 90-4	Air Assault Operators. 16 March 1987.
FM 90-7	Combined Arms Obstacle Integration. 29 September 1994

### Other Product Types

STP 5-21II-MQS	Military Qualification Standards II Engineer (21) Company Grade Officer's Manual. 22 March 1991.
----------------	--

### Soldier Training Publications

STP 19-95B1-SM	Soldier's Manual, MOS 95B, Military Police, Skill Level 1. 21 February 1997.
STP 21-1-SMCT	Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks Skill Level 1. 1 October 1994
STP 21-24-SMCT	Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT) Skill Levels 2-4. 1 October 1992
STP 21-II-MQS	Military Qualification Standards II Manual of Common Tasks for (Lieutenants and Captains). 31 January 1991.
STP 21-I-MQS	Military Qualification Standards I Manual of Common Tasks (Precommissioning Requirements). 31 May 1990.
STP 3-54B2-SM	Soldier's Manual, Chemical Operations Specialist, MOS 54B Skill Level 2. 3 October 1995.
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	Soldier's Manual Skill Levels 2/3/4 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 12B, Combat Engineer. To be published within six months.
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide: 62G Quarrying Specialist (Skill Levels 1/2/3). 5 May 1986

### Technical Manuals

TM 11-3895-203-15	Operator's Organizational, Direct Support, General Support and Depot Maintenance Manual for Reel Equipment, CE-11 (NSN 5805-00-407-7722). 11 April 1967.
TM 11-5805-262-12	Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Switchboards, Telephone, Manual, SB-22/PT (NSN 5805-00-257-3602) and SB-22A/PT (5805-00-715-6171) (Including Tone Signaling Adapter, TA-977/PT (5805-01-040-9653). 15 June 1990.
TM 11-5805-294-12	Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Manual Telephone Switchboard, SB-993/GT (NSN 5805-00-708-2202). 8 September 1983.
TM 750-244-2	Procedures for Destruction of Electronics Materiel to Prevent Enemy Use (Electronics Command). 14 March 1972.

### Training Circulars

TC 12-16	PAC Noncommissioned Officer's Guide. 27 June 1991.
----------	--

TC 12-17 Adjutant's Call/The S1 Handbook. 17 March 1992.  
TC 24-20 Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988.

### **Army Regulations**

AR 190-8 Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees, and Other Detainees. 1 October 1997.  
AR 200-1 Environmental Protection and Enhancement. (This item is included on EM 0001) 21 February 1997  
AR 220-10 Preparation for Oversea Movement of Units (POM). 15 June 1973.  
AR 27-1 Legal Services, Judge Advocate Legal Services. (This item is included on EM 0001) 3 February 1995.  
AR 380-5 Department of the Army Information Security Program. (This item is included on EM 0001) 25 February 1988.  
AR 385-10 The Army Safety Program. (This item is included on EM 0001) 23 May 1988.  
AR 40-5 Preventive Medicine. (This item is included on EM 0001) 15 October 1990.  
AR 530-1 Operations Security (OPSEC). 3 March 1995.  
AR 600-15 Indebtedness of Military Personnel. 14 March 1986.  
AR 600-38 Meal Card Management System. 11 March 1988.  
AR 600-8 Military Personnel Management. 1 October 1989.  
AR 600-8-1 Army Casualty Operations/Assistance/Insurance. (This item is included on EM 0001) 20 October 1994.  
AR 600-8-14 Identification Cards for Members of the Uniformed Services, Their Family Members, and Other Eligible Personnel. 1 March 1998.  
AR 600-8-2 Suspension of Favorable Personnel Actions (FLAGS). (This item is included on EM 0001) 30 October 1987.  
AR 600-8-8 The Total Army Sponsorship Program. (This item is included on EM 0001) 1 July 1993.  
AR 608-99 Family Support, Child Custody, and Paternity. 1 November 1994.  
AR 638-30 Graves Registration Organization and Functions in Support of Major Military Operations. 1 September 1980.  
AR 710-2 Inventory Management Supply Policy Below the Wholesale Level. 31 October 1997.  
AR 750-43 Army Test, Measurement and Diagnostic Equipment Program. 28 November 1997.

### **Department of Army Forms**

DA FORM 1155 Witness Statement on Individual. 1 June 1966  
DA FORM 1156 Casualty Feeder Report. 1 June 1966  
DA FORM 1594 Daily Staff Journal or Duty Officer's Log. 1 November 1962.

### **Department of Army Pamphlets**

DA PAM 710-2-1 Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures)(Standalone Pub). (This item is included on EM 0001) 31 December 1997. 31 December 1997  
DA PAM 738-750 Functional Users Manual for The Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS). 1 August 1994

### **Field Manuals**

FM 100-5 Operations. 14 June 1993.  
FM 101-5 Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997.

FM 10-64	Mortuary Affairs Operations 16 February 1999
FM 10-67-1	Concepts and Equipment of Petroleum Operations 2 April 1998
FM 12-6	Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994
FM 19-30	Physical Security. To be Published Within Six Months.
FM 19-40	Enemy Prisoners of War, Civilian Internees and Detained Persons. 27 February 1976.
FM 20-3	Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999.
FM 20-32	Mine/Countermine Operations. 28 May 1998
FM 21-10	Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000.
FM 21-10-1	Unit Field Sanitation Team. 11 October 1989.
FM 21-16	Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) Procedures. 30 August 1994.
FM 21-20	Physical Fitness Training. 30 September 1992.
FM 21-60	Visual Signals. 30 September 1987.
FM 21-75	Combat Skills of the Soldier. 30 August 1984
FM 22-51	Leaders` Manual for Combat Stress Control 29 September 1994
FM 22-9	Soldier Performance in Continuous Operations. 12 December 1991.
FM 24-1	Signal Support in the Air-Land Battle. 15 October 1990.
FM 24-18	Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987.
FM 24-19	Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991
FM 24-33	Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures. 17 July 1990.
FM 24-35	(O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI". 26 October 1990
FM 24-35-1	(O) Signal Supplemental Instructions. 1 October 1990
FM 25-100	Training the Force. 15 November 1988
FM 3-100	Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals. 8 May 1996.
FM 3-11	Flame, Riot Control Agents and Herbicide Operations. 19 August 1996.
FM 3-19	NBC Reconnaissance. 19 November 1993.
FM 3-3	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992.
FM 3-34.2	Combined-Arms Breaching Operations. 31 August 2000
FM 3-4	NBC Protection. 29 May 1992.
FM 34-60	Counterintelligence. 3 October 1995.
FM 3-5	NBC Decontamination. 28 July 2000.
FM 3-50	Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990.
FM 44-100	US Army Air and Missile Defense Operations. 15 June 2000.
FM 44-64	SHORAD Battalion and Battery Operations. 5 June 1997.
FM 44-8	Combined Arms for the Air Defense. 1 June 1999.
FM 44-80	Visual Aircraft Recognition. 30 September 1996.
FM 5-10	Combat Engineer Platoon. 3 October 1995.
FM 5-100	Engineer Operations. 27 February 1996.
FM 5-103	Survivability. 10 June 1985.
FM 5-114	Engineer Operations Short of War. 13 July 1992.
FM 5-170	Engineer Reconnaissance. 5 May 1998.
FM 5-250	Explosives and Demolitions. 30 July 1998
FM 5-34	Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999
FM 5-430-00-1	Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Road Design. 26 August 1994.

FM 5-430-00-2	Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Airfield and Heliport Design. 29 September 1994.
FM 5-436	Paving and Surfacing Operations. 28 April 2000.
FM 55-30	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations. 27 June 1997
FM 5-71-2	Armored Task-Force Engineer Combat Operations. 28 June 1996.
FM 57-38	Pathfinder Operations. 9 April 1993.
FM 63-2	Division Support Command, Armored, Infantry, and Mechanized Infantry Divisions. 20 May 1991.
FM 7-10	The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990.
FM 71-1	Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team. 26 January 1998
FM 7-7	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985.
FM 7-7J	Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley). 7 May 1993.
FM 7-8	Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992.
FM 8-10	Health Service Support in a Theater of Operations. 1 March 1991.
FM 8-10-1	The Medical Company Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 29 December 1994
FM 8-10-6	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques and Procedures. 14 April 00.
FM 90-13	River-Crossing Operations. 26 January 1998
FM 90-4	Air Assault Operators. 16 March 1987.
FM 90-7	Combined Arms Obstacle Integration. 29 September 1994
FM 9-43-1	Maintenance Operations and Procedures. 21 February 1997.

#### **Other Product Types**

DD FORM 2745	Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) Capture Tag. May 1996.
UCMJ	Uniform Code of Military Justice.

#### **Soldier Training Publications**

STP 10-92Y1-SM	Soldier's Manual, MOS 92Y, Unit Supply Specialist, Skill Level 1. 23 February 1994.
STP 10-92Y24-SM-TG	Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide for Unit Supply Specialist, MOS 92Y Skill Levels 2, 3, and 4. 23 February 1994.
STP 19-95B1-SM	Soldier's Manual, MOS 95B, Military Police, Skill Level 1. 21 February 1997.
STP 21-1-SMCT	Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks Skill Level 1. 1 October 1994
STP 21-24-SMCT	Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT) Skill Levels 2-4. 1 October 1992
STP 21-II-MQS	Military Qualification Standards II Manual of Common Tasks for (Lieutenants and Captains). 31 January 1991.
STP 3-54B2-SM	Soldier's Manual, Chemical Operations Specialist, MOS 54B Skill Level 2. 3 October 1995.

#### **Technical Manuals**

TM 11-3895-203-15	Operator's Organizational, Direct Support, General Support and Depot Maintenance Manual for Reel Equipment, CE-11 (NSN 5805-00-407-7722). 11 April 1967.
TM 11-5805-262-12	Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Switchboards, Telephone, Manual, SB-22/PT (NSN 5805-00-257-3602) and SB-22A/PT (5805-00-715-6171) (Including Tone Signaling Adapter, TA-977/PT (5805-01-040-9653). 15 June 1990.

TM 11-5805-294-12	Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Manual Telephone Switchboard, SB-993/GT (NSN 5805-00-708-2202). 8 September 1983.
TM 750-244-2	Procedures for Destruction of Electronics Materiel to Prevent Enemy Use (Electronics Command). 14 March 1972.
TM 750-244-3	Procedures for Destruction of Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (Mobility Equipment Command). 23 September 1969.
TM 750-244-6	Procedures for Destruction of Tank-Automotive Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (US Army Tank-Automotive Command). 3 October 1972.
TM 750-244-7	Procedures for Destruction of Equipment in Federal Supply Classifications 1000, 1005, 1010, 1015, 1020, 1025, 1030, 1055, 1090 and 1095 to Prevent Enemy Use. 18 June 1970.

### **Training Circulars**

TC 12-16	PAC Noncommissioned Officer's Guide. 27 June 1991.
TC 12-17	Adjutant's Call/The S1 Handbook. 17 March 1992.
TC 24-20	Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988.

### **Related Publications**

Related publications are sources of additional information. They are not required in order to understand this publication.

### **Army Regulations**

AR 30-1	The Army Food Service Program. 1 January 1985.
AR 725-50	Requisitioning, Receipt, and Issue System. 15 November 1995.

### **Department of Army Forms**

DA FORM 1248	Road Reconnaissance Report. 1 July 1960.
DA FORM 1249	Bridge Reconnaissance Report. 1 July 1960.
DA FORM 1250	Tunnel Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955.
DA FORM 1251	Ford Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955.
DA FORM 1252	Ferry Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955.
DA FORM 1355	Minefield Record. 1 March 1987
DA FORM 1711-R	Engineer Reconnaissance Report. May 1985.

### **Department of Army Pamphlets**

DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for The Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS). 1 August 1994
----------------	---

### **Field Manuals**

FM 100-5	Operations. 14 June 1993.
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997.
FM 101-5-1	Operational Terms and Graphics (MCRP 5-2A). 30 September 1997
FM 10-23	Basic Doctrine for Field Feeding and Class I Operations Management. 18 April 1996.
FM 1-100	Army Aviation Operations. 21 February 1997.
FM 12-6	Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994

FM 20-32	Mine/Countermining Operations. 28 May 1998
FM 21-10	Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000.
FM 5-100	Engineer Operations. 27 February 1996.
FM 5-102	Countermobility. 14 March 1985
FM 5-103	Survivability. 10 June 1985.
FM 5-34	Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999
FM 5-71-2	Armored Task-Force Engineer Combat Operations. 28 June 1996.
FM 63-1	Support Battalions and Squadrons, Separate Brigades and Armored Cavalry Regiment. 30 September 1993.
FM 63-2	Division Support Command, Armored, Infantry, and Mechanized Infantry Divisions. 20 May 1991.
FM 63-20	Forward Support Battalion. 26 February 1990.
FM 63-21	Main Support Battalion. 7 August 1990.
FM 63-3	Corps Support Command. 30 September 1993.
FM 63-4	Combat Service Support Operations - Theater Army Area Command. 24 September 1984.
FM 90-4	Air Assault Operators. 16 March 1987.

### **Army Regulations**

AR 15-6	Procedures for Investigating Officers and Boards of Officers. 11 May 1988.
AR 190-47	The Army Corrections System. 15 August 1996.
AR 220-1	Unit Status Reporting. (This item is included on EM 0001) 1 September 1997.
AR 220-15	Journals and Journal Files. 1 December 1983.
AR 25-11	Record Communications and the Privacy Communications System. 4 September 1990.
AR 25-50	Preparing and Managing Correspondence. 21 November 1988.
AR 27-10	Legal Services: Military Justice. 24 June 1996.
AR 27-20	Claims. 31 December 1997.
AR 385-40	Accident Reporting and Records. 1 November 1994.
AR 600-20	Army Command Policy (This item is included on EM 0001) 15 July 1999.
AR 600-85	Alcohol and Drug Abuse Prevention and Control Program (Reprinted w/Basic incl C1) (This item is included on EM 0001). 3 November 1986.
AR 635-200	Enlisted Personnel (Reprinted w/Basic incl C1 - 14) (This item is included on EM 0001). 5 July 1984.
AR 700-138	Army Logistics Readiness and Sustainability. (This item is included on EM 0001) 16 September 1997.

### **Field Manuals**

FM 10-23-1	Commander's Guide to Food Service Operations. 17 March 1992.
FM 10-27-1	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster General Support Supply Operations. 20 April 1993.
FM 10-27-2	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster Direct Support Supply and Field Service Operations. 18 June 1991
FM 10-27-4	Organizational Supply and Services for Unit Leaders. 14 April 2000.
FM 10-500-1	Airdrop Support Operations in a Theater of Operations. 19 June 1991
FM 16-1	Religious Support. 26 May 1995.
FM 20-22	Vehicle Recovery Operations 18 September 1990
FM 21-10-1	Unit Field Sanitation Team. 11 October 1989.

FM 21-20	Physical Fitness Training. 30 September 1992.
FM 21-26	Map Reading and Land Navigation. 7 May 1993.
FM 21-31	Topographic Symbols. 19 June 1961.
FM 34-1	Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations. 27 September 1994.
FM 34-3	Intelligence Analysis. 15 March 1990.
FM 34-54	Technical Intelligence. 30 January 1998.
FM 34-80	Brigade and Battalion Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations. 15 April 1986.
FM 5-102	Counter mobility. 14 March 1985
FM 5-104	General Engineering. 12 November 1986.
FM 5-33	Terrain Analysis. 11 July 1990.
FM 5-410	Military Soils Engineering. 23 December 1992.
FM 5-480	Port Construction and Repair. 12 December 1990.
FM 55-20	Army Rail Transport Units and Operations. 1 June 2000.
FM 55-65	Strategic Deployment. 3 October 1995.

### **Other Product Types**

DD FORM 173/1	Joint Message Form. March 1979.
STANAG 2024	Military Vehicle Lighting. July 1974.

### **Soldier Training Publications**

STP 3-54B1-SM	Soldiers Manual, MOS 54B, Chemical Operations Specialist. 16 June 1995.
STP 5-12B1-SM	Soldier's Manual: MOS 12B, Combat Engineer, Skill Level 1. 14 February 2001

### **Technical Manuals**

TM 750-244-3	Procedures for Destruction of Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (Mobility Equipment Command). 23 September 1969.
TM 750-244-6	Procedures for Destruction of Tank-Automotive Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (US Army Tank-Automotive Command). 3 October 1972.
TM 750-244-7	Procedures for Destruction of Equipment in Federal Supply Classifications 1000, 1005, 1010, 1015, 1020, 1025, 1030, 1055, 1090 and 1095 to Prevent Enemy Use. 18 June 1970.



**QUESTIONNAIRE**

MISSION TRAINING PLAN (MTP) NUMBER \_\_\_\_\_ DATE \_\_\_\_\_

MTP TITLE \_\_\_\_\_

Request your recommendations to improve this training publication. To make it easier for you to make recommendations, a standard questionnaire has been provided. Please respond to all questions by circling your answer or providing a written response, where requested. Please make a copy of this questionnaire. Mail to: Commandant, Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-E, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-6600.

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU.

1. What is your position (for example, company commander, platoon sergeant [PSG])?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. How long have you served in this position? \_\_\_\_\_

3. How long have you served in this unit? \_\_\_\_\_

4. What is your component?

- a. Active Component
- b. Reserve Component

5. Where is your unit?

- a. Continental United States (CONUS)
- b. United States Army, Europe (USAREUR)
- c. United States Army, Western Command (WESTCOM)
- d. Eighth United States Army (USA)
- e. Other (specify)

\_\_\_\_\_

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS ARE ABOUT THE MTP IN GENERAL.

6. How do you feel this document has affected training in your unit when compared to other training products?

- a. Has made training worse.
- b. Has made training better.
- c. Has had no affect on training.
- d. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

7. How easy is the document to use, compared to other training products?

- a. More difficult.
- b. Easier.
- c. About the same.
- d. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

For question numbers 8 through 11, choose one of the following answers:

- a. Chapter 1, Unit Training.
- b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes.
- c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines.
- d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises.
- e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines.
- f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation.
- g. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

8. What part of the MTP document was least useful? \_\_\_\_\_

9. What part of the MTP document was most useful? \_\_\_\_\_

10. What is the most difficult part of the MTP to understand?  
\_\_\_\_\_

11. What is the easiest part of the MTP to understand? \_\_\_\_\_

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE TRAINING EXERCISES AND SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISES (STXs).

12. The exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. In your opinion, how well do they fulfill this purpose?

- a. They do not prepare the unit at all.
- b. They help, but only provide 20 percent or less of my unit's training requirements.
- c. They help, but only provide 21 to 50 percent of my unit's training requirements.
- d. They help, but only provide between 51 to 80 percent of my unit's training requirements.
- e. They provide 81 percent or more of my unit's training requirements.

13. Would you recommend that any STX be added or deleted from the MTP? \_\_\_\_\_

14. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the exercises?

- a. Have too many pages.
- b. Are hard to read and understand.
- c. Need more illustrations.
- d. Need more information on how to set up the exercises.
- e. Need more information on leader training.
- f. Need more information on how to conduct the exercises.
- g. Need more information on support and resources.
- h. Need more information on normally attached elements.
- i. Do not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills.
- j. Do not know or do not have an opinion.



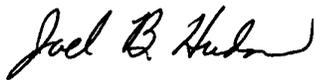


**ARTEP 5-217-35-MTP  
2 OCTOBER 2000**

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

ERIC K. SHINSEKI  
General, United States Army  
Chief of Staff

Official:



JOEL B. HUDSON  
Administrative Assistant to the  
Secretary of the Army  
0111303

DISTRIBUTION:

*Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve:* Not to be distributed. Electronic Means Only

**PIN: 079010-000**